The Rationality Problem in Invariant Theory

Christian Böhning
Mathematisches Institut
Georg-August-Universität Göttingen
Contents

Introduction v

1 The rationality problem in invariant theory 1
  1.1 Introduction .......................................... 1
  1.2 The rationality problem .............................. 2
    1.2.1 Quotients and fields of invariants ............ 2
    1.2.2 Results for specific groups .................. 11
  1.3 Cones and homogeneous bundles ..................... 19
    1.3.1 Torus orbits and the nullcone ................. 20
    1.3.2 Stratification of the nullcone and rationality .. 23
  1.4 Overview of some further topics ................... 35
    1.4.1 Cohomological obstructions to rationality and fields of
          definition ........................................... 35
  1.5 The exceptional simple groups .................... 39
    1.5.1 The case $G_2$ .................................. 40
    1.5.2 The cases $F_4$ and $E_6$ ....................... 43
    1.5.3 The case $E_7$ .................................. 52
    1.5.4 Concluding remarks ............................ 59

2 Techniques and recent results 61
  2.1 Introduction .......................................... 61
  2.2 Methods .................................................. 61
    2.2.1 Slice method and 2-form trick .................. 61
    2.2.2 Double bundle method ........................... 69
    2.2.3 Method of covariants ............................ 71
    2.2.4 $G$-bundles and configuration spaces of points .. 73
# CONTENTS

## 3 Rationality of $\mathcal{M}_3$  
3.1 Introduction ................................................. 77  
3.2 A remarkable $(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})$-section ................. 77  
   3.2.1 $(G, H)$-sections and covariants ....................... 78  
   3.2.2 Binary quartics ...................................... 80  
   3.2.3 From quintic to cubic equations .................... 83  
   3.2.4 From cubic to quadratic equations .................. 88  
3.3 Further sections and inner projections ...................... 98  
   3.3.1 Binary quartics again and a $(\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}, \mathfrak{S}_4)$-section .... 98  
   3.3.2 Dividing by the action of $H$ ....................... 102  
   3.3.3 Inner projections and the ”no-name” method .......... 106  
   3.3.4 Appendix A: Collection of formulas for section 2 .... 114  
   3.3.5 Appendix B: Collection of formulas for section 3 .... 118

## 4 Rationality of moduli of plane curves  
4.1 Introduction .................................................. 121  
4.2 Proof of rationality ......................................... 123  
   4.2.1 Outline of proof .................................... 124  
   4.2.2 Notation and definition of the covariants .......... 126  
   4.2.3 Special linear subspaces of the base loci .......... 129  
   4.2.4 Fiberwise surjectivity of the covariants .......... 131  
   4.2.5 Sections of principal bundles and proof of rationality 137  
4.3 Another proof for the dominance of $S_d$ .................. 139  
   4.3.1 Configurations of lines and Scorza map ............. 139

## 5 Small degree plane curves  
5.1 Introduction .................................................. 145  
5.2 A Clebsch-Gordan formula for $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ ............. 145  
   5.2.1 The elementary maps .................................. 146  
   5.2.2 Relation to the Littlewood Richardson rule .......... 149  
   5.2.3 Linear independence of elementary maps .......... 156  
5.3 Algorithms related to the double bundle method .......... 157  
   5.3.1 Matrix representatives for equivariant projections .. 157  
5.4 Applications to rationality questions ....................... 161  
   5.4.1 Results for plane curves ......................... 161  
   5.4.2 Results for mixed tensors ......................... 167
Introduction

Invariant theory as a mathematical discipline on its own originated in England around the middle of the nineteenth century with Cayley’s papers on hyperdeterminants and his famous Memoirs on Quantics, followed by Salmon, Sylvester and Boole, and Aronhold, Clebsch and Gordan in Germany. There was also a third school in Italy associated with the names of Briosc, Cremona, Beltrami and Capelli. The techniques employed in this early phase, long before Hilbert transformed the subject with his conceptual ideas, were often computational and symbolic in nature. One of the main questions was, given a linear algebraic group $G$ and finite-dimensional $G$-representation $V$ over $\mathbb{C}$, to describe the algebra of invariant polynomial functions $\mathbb{C}[V]^G$ explicitly; in fact, most attention was given classically to the case where $G = \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$ or $G = \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ and $V$ is a space of binary or ternary forms of some fixed degree.

Suppose now $G$ to be connected and semisimple. Today we know by work of Popov that the algebra of invariants $\mathbb{C}[V]^G$ can be arbitrarily complicated: a natural measure for its complexity is the length of its syzygy chain or in other words its homological dimension $\text{hd}(\mathbb{C}[V]^G)$. Then (see e.g. [Po92], Chapter 3) it is known that if $G$ is nontrivial, then for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists a $G$-module $V$ with $\text{hd}(\mathbb{C}[V]^G) > n$ and there exist, up to isomorphism and addition of trivial direct summands, only finitely many $G$-modules with $\text{hd}(\mathbb{C}[V]^G) \leq n$. Moreover, the complexity of invariant rings increases quite rapidly: classically, a finite generating set and finite set of defining relations for $\mathbb{C}[\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^2)]^{\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})}$ was only obtained for $d \leq 6$ to which the 20th century (Dixmier & Lazard, Shioda) contributed just $d = 7, 8$. For $d > 8$ the homological dimension of the algebra of invariants is known to be greater than 10 (cf. [Po-Vi], §8).

Thus, algebraically, one is lead to ask: when is the structure of invariants of a $G$-module $V$ as simple as possible? If we interpret this as asking when
$\mathbb{C}[V]^G$ is free, i.e. has algebraically independent homogeneous generators, then, by Popov’s theorem, the classification of such $V$ is a finite problem and more information on it can be found in [Po92], [Po-Vi]. One can also try to classify $G$-modules $V$ with $\mathbb{C}[V]^G$ of fixed homological dimension. However, the situation acquires a very interesting different flavour if we shift from a birational to a biregular point of view, and ask

When is $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$, the field of invariant rational functions, a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}$ or, as we will say, rational?

This is the main question various aspects of which we will treat in this work. $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ is always of finite transcendence degree over $\mathbb{C}$ (there is no Hilbert’s 14th Problem birationally), and we can ask this for any linear algebraic group $G$ whatsoever. If $G$ is not assumed to be connected, there are examples by Saltman [Sa] that $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ need not even become rational after adjunction of a number of additional indeterminates ($\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ is not stably rational). $G$ can be taken as a finite solvable group acting on $V$ through its regular representation. This contradicts a conjecture put forward originally by Emmy Noether. The quite astonishing fact, though, given the complexity of invariant rings themselves, is that no example with irrational $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ is known if $G$ is assumed to be connected! Putting $X = V$, we can reinterpret our original question as asking: when is the quotient variety $X/G$ rational? $X/G$ is taken in the sense of Rosenlicht and well-defined up to birational equivalence. One may replace $X$ by e.g. a rational homogeneous variety and ask the same question: again no example of an irrational quotient $X/G$ is known if $G$ is connected. The introduction of the geometric point of view is not only a reformulation, but an indispensable step for any progress on our original algebraic problem. One may add as another example the solution to the Lüroth Problem in dimension 2: is an algebraic function field $L$ of transcendence degree 2 over $\mathbb{C}$ which is contained in a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}$ itself a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}$? The affirmative answer follows as a corollary of Castelnuovo’s Theorem characterizing smooth projective rational surfaces as those that do not have (non-zero) holomorphic one-forms and whose bicanonical linear system is empty. There is apparently no purely algebraic proof of this fact, though there was a time when some people tried to rewrite the Italian birational theory of algebraic surfaces in terms of function fields. We mention that there are counter-examples to the Lüroth Problem in dimension 3 and higher (cf. Artin and Mumford [A-M]). So there are examples
of \textit{unirational} algebraic function fields $L$ (unirational means contained in a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}$) of transcendence degree $\geq 3$ which are not themselves purely transcendental extensions of $\mathbb{C}$. There are also examples of stably rational non-rational $L$ for transcendence degree $3$ and higher \cite[B-CT-S-SwD]{B-CT-S-SwD}, which is the solution to the \textit{Zariski problem}. Thus we have the strict inclusions

$$\{ \text{rational } L \} \subsetneq \{ \text{stably rational } L \} \subsetneq \{ \text{unirational } L \}. $$

Another reason to study quotients of the form $V/G$ (or $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$) is that many moduli spaces in algebraic geometry are of this so-called \textit{linear type}. For example, $\mathcal{M}_g$, the moduli space of curves of genus $g$, is known to be of linear type for $1 \leq g \leq 6$. For example, $\mathcal{M}_1 \simeq \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$ is the ubiquitous moduli space of elliptic curves, and $\mathcal{M}_2 \simeq \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^6(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$ because a genus $2$ curve is a double cover of $\mathbb{P}^1$ branched in $6$ points via its canonical map. $\mathcal{M}_3 \simeq \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ since a general (non-hyperelliptic) curve of genus $3$ is realized as a smooth quartic in $\mathbb{P}^2$ via the canonical embedding. We do not discuss $\mathcal{M}_4$, $\mathcal{M}_5$, $\mathcal{M}_6$, but just remark that certainly $\mathcal{M}_g$ ceizes to be of linear type at some point because for $g \geq 23$, $\mathcal{M}_g$ is not even unirational. Other examples of moduli spaces of linear type are the moduli spaces of polarized K3 surfaces of degree $d$ for $d = 2, 4, 6, 10$ (these classify pairs $(S, h)$ where $S$ is a smooth K3 surface and $h$ an ample class with $h^2 = d$ on $S$), or many moduli spaces of vector bundles. Of course, one should add to this list moduli spaces such as $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^{n+1})^\vee)/\text{SL}_{n+1}(\mathbb{C})$, the moduli space of degree $d$ hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}^n$ (for projective equivalence) which are of linear type by definition, and very interesting in their own right.

The transgression in the behaviour of $\mathcal{M}_g$ from being rational/unirational for small $g$ and of general type for $g$ large illustrates an important point: rational (or unirational) moduli spaces emerge as the most interesting examples (whereas the general curve of genus $g$ for large $g$ is rather hard to put hands on as a mathematical object). In general, rational varieties (or those close to being rational) are those that appear most frequently in applications in mathematics and make up the greatest part of one’s motivating examples in algebraic geometry, though they are only a very small portion in the class of all varieties. It is precisely the fact that they are for the most part tangible objects and amenable to concrete study which explains their importance, and the wildness and absence of special features, symmetries etc. which lessens the impact of the rest of varieties on the whole of mathematics.
What methods are there to tackle the rationality problem for $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$? This is discussed in great detail in Chapters 1 and 2, so we content ourselves here with emphasizing some general structural features and recurring problems.

- If $V$ and $W$ are representations of the linear algebraic group $G$ where the generic stabilizer is trivial, then $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ and $\mathbb{C}(W)^G$ are stably equivalent, i.e. they become isomorphic after adjoining some number of indeterminates to each of them. This is the content of the so-called "no-name lemma" of Bogomolov and Katsylo [Bo-Ka]. So the stable equivalence type is determined by the group $G$ alone in this case, and in many cases one can prove easily that a space $V/G$ is stably rational.

- If one wants to prove rationality for a quotient $X/G$ ($X$ could be a linear $G$-representation or a more general $G$-variety), then, after possibly some preparatory reduction steps consisting of taking sections for the $G$ action on $X$ and thus reducing $G$ to a smaller group and replacing $X$ by a subvariety, virtually all the methods for proving rationality consist in introducing some fibration structure in the space $X$: one finds a $G$-equivariant rational map $\varphi : X \rightarrow Y$ to some base variety $Y$ such that $Y/G$ is stably rational, and the generic fibre of $\varphi$ is rational, and then one tries to use descent to prove that $X/G \rightarrow Y/G$ is birational to a Zariski bundle over $Y/G$ with rational fibre.

- In the examples which occur in practice where, in the situation of the previous item, $X$ is generically a $G$-vector bundle over $Y$, the map $\varphi$ can almost always be viewed as induced from a resolution of singularities map $H \times_F F \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ where $\mathcal{S}$ is a stratum of the unstable cone in a representation $W$ of a reductive group $H \subset G$ and $F \subset W$ is some subspace which is stable under a parabolic subgroup $P \subset H$. This method is described in detail in Section 1.3 of Chapter 1.

- In the set-up of the previous two items, one almost always has to prove that the map $\varphi$ satisfies certain nondegeneracy or genericity conditions, and this is usually a hard part of the proof. As an illustration, one can take a surface $S$ in $\mathbb{P}^4$ which is the intersection of two quadric hypersurfaces $Q_1$ and $Q_2$. To prove rationality of $S$ one projects from a line $l$ common to both $Q_1$ and $Q_2$, but one has to check that the
projection is dominant unto \( \mathbb{P}^2 \); otherwise \( S \) could be a bundle over an elliptic curve which is irrational. Checking nondegeneracy typically involves the use of computer algebra, but special ideas are needed when e.g. one deals with an infinite number of spaces \( V_n/G, n = 1, 2, \ldots \). A trick used in Chapter 4 is to show that the data for which genericity has to be checked becomes a periodic function of \( n \) over a finite field \( \mathbb{F}_p \), and then to use upper-semicontinuity over \( \text{Spec}(\mathbb{Z}) \) to prove nondegeneracy over \( \mathbb{Q} \) (or \( \mathbb{C} \)).

- Finally, it would be very nice to give an example of a space \( V/G \) (where \( V \) as before is a linear representation of the connected linear algebraic group \( G \)) which is not rational, if such an example exists at all. A possible candidate could be given by taking \( V_d \) the space of pairs of \( d \times d \) matrices and \( G = \text{PGL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \) acting on \( V_d \) by simultaneous conjugation. The corresponding invariant function field \( \mathbb{C}(V_d)^G \) is not known to be rational or even stably rational in general. For further information see Section 1.2.1 in Chapter 1. To determine the properties of \( \mathbb{C}(V_d)^G \) for general \( d \) is one of the major open and guiding problems in the subject. One should also remark that if a space \( V/G \) is stably rational, then if it were not rational, there would be practically no methods available today to prove this: the Clemens-Griffiths method of intermediate Jacobians (see [Is-Pr], Chapter 8) is limited to threefolds and the quotients \( V/G \) quickly have higher dimension, the Noether-Fano-Iskovskikh-Manin method (see loc. cit.) based on the study of maximal centers for birational maps has not been put to use in this context and it is hard to see how one should do it, and Brauer-Grothendieck invariants are not sensitive to the distinction between stably rational irrational and rational varieties.

The main known results of rationality for spaces \( V/G \) can be summarized as follows: in [Kat83], [Kat84], [Bogo2] and [Bo-Ka] it is proven that all quotients \( \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) are rational, so the problem is solved completely for binary forms. The moduli spaces \( C(d) = \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) of plane curves of degree \( d \) are rational for \( d \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \), all \( d \), and for \( d \equiv 1 \pmod{9} \), \( d \geq 19 \), by [Shep], and for \( d \equiv 0 \pmod{3} \), \( d \geq 210 \), by [Kat89]. This was basically everything that was known for ternary forms prior to the present work, but there were also several rationality results for \( C(d) \) for small particular values of \( d \). Though these are somewhat sporadic, they are very valuable and should be rated rather high since rationality of \( C(d) \) can be very hard to
prove for small $d$, cf. [Kat92/2], [Kat96] and Chapter 3 for the case of $C(4)$. For moduli spaces of hypersurfaces of degree $d$ in $\mathbb{P}^n$ for $n \geq 3$ much less is known: they are rational for $n = 3$, $d = 1, 2, 3$, and $n > 3$, $d = 1, 2$, which is trivial except for $n = d = 3$ cf. [Be]. Likewise, spaces of mixed tensors do not seem to have been studied so far in a systematic way to my knowledge, maybe due to the smaller geometric relevance. We should add, however, that in [Shep], the rationality of $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee \otimes (\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$, the space of pencils of binary forms of degree $d$, is proven if $d$ is even and $d \geq 10$. But for connected linear groups $G$ other than $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$, $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$, there are again no such good results as far as I know. The reader may turn to the surveys [Dolg1] and [CT-S] for more detailed information to complement our very coarse outline.

We turn to the description of our main results and the contents of the separate chapters. We will be rather brief because detailed information about a certain chapter can be found in the separate introduction preceding the respective chapter in the main body of the text.

Chapter 1 introduces basic notions, gives a detailed geometric discussion of the rationality problem for the quotient of the space of pairs of $n \times n$ matrices acted on by $\text{PGL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ through simultaneous conjugation, and presents known results for specific groups, tori, solvable groups, special groups in the sense of Séminaire Chevalley. We then add a detailed exposition of a unifying technique for proving rationality of spaces $V/G$ that comprises a lot of the known tricks; it uses the Hesselink stratification of the Hilbert nullcone and desingularizations of the strata in terms of homogeneous bundles culminating in Theorem 1.3.2.7. Though the method was sketched in [Shep89], it has not received such a systematic treatment so far. In Proposition 1.3.2.10 we prove a criterion for stable rationality of quotients of Grassmannians by an SL-action which is new, and in combination with Theorem 1.3.2.7 yields rationality of the moduli space of plane curves of degree 34 (Theorem 1.3.2.11) which was previously unknown. In section 1.4 we give a brief summary of further topics, cohomological obstructions to rationality (unramified cohomology) and aspects of the rationality problem over fields other than $\mathbb{C}$.

Chapter 2 contains a discussion of techniques available to prove rationality of spaces $V/G$; in part they fit in the framework of Theorem 1.3.2.7, but are presented on an elementary level with examples here which is necessary for concrete applications. In Proposition 2.2.1.5 we give a reduction of the field of rational functions of the moduli space of plane curves $C$ of degree $d$ to-
gether with a theta-characteristic \( \theta \) with \( h^0(C, \theta) = 0 \) to a simpler invariant function field which is new. Finally we give an account of a method for proving rationality due to P. Katsylo, which is based on consideration of zero loci of sections in \( G \)-bundles over rational homogeneous manifolds, and for which there is no good reference as far as we know. As an application we present a proof of the rationality of the space of 7 unordered points in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) modulo projectivities due to Katsylo, since the reference is not easily accessible.

In Chapter 3 we give an account of Katsylo’s proof of the rationality of \( \mathfrak{M}_3 \), the moduli space of curves of genus 3, which is birationally the same as the moduli space of plane quartic curves under projectivities. This is inserted as an example of the difficulties that arise in dealing with moduli spaces of plane curves of small degree, and is not so much intended as a reproduction of Katsylo’s proof, but rather as an attempt to geometrize as many as possible of Katsylo’s purely algebraic and computational arguments. We hope that we have at least partially succeeded in clarifying the underlying geometry and structure of proof of this difficult result.

The main new result of Chapter 4 is Theorem 4.1.0.1, saying that the moduli space of plane curves of degree \( d \) is rational for all sufficiently large \( d \). We obtain effective bounds for the degree \( d \): for \( d \equiv 0 \pmod{3} \), \( d \geq 210 \) this is the result of [Kat89], and we prove that for \( d \equiv 1 \pmod{3} \), \( d \geq 37 \), and \( d \equiv 2 \pmod{3} \), \( d \geq 65 \), this space is rational, too. The proof uses the methods of covariants of [Shep] in slightly modified form, the method of writing a form as a sum of powers of linear forms, and some combinatorics and finite field techniques that may be interesting in other situations.

In Chapter 5 we first prove an analogue of the Clebsch-Gordan formula for \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) (Theorem 5.2.1.1) which allows one to describe all bilinear maps \( U \times V \rightarrow W \) of finite-dimensional \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \)-representations explicitly, and to manipulate them in a very efficient way in computer algebra systems. In addition to this new result, we also introduce other computational tools for dealing with maps of this type in an algorithmically efficient way, based again on writing bihomogeneous polynomials as sums of powers of linear forms and on interpolation. As an example of these techniques, we prove the rationality of \( \mathbb{P}(V(4, 4))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) (Theorem 5.4.2.2). The main application of these new computational methods, however, is the proof that the moduli space of plane curves of degree \( d \) is always rational, except possibly for 15 values of \( d \) which are given explicitly. This presents a substantial advancement over the state of knowledge on rationality of moduli of plane curves prior to the present work.
Finally I would like to thank Yuri Tschinkel for many useful discussions and for his proposal to work on the subject which turned out to be so rewarding; furthermore I am very grateful to Fedor Bogomolov for many stimulating discussions and shaping my view of the subject. Special thanks go to Hans-Christian Graf von Bothmer. Chapters 4 and 5 present joint work with him, and without his mathematical and computational skills the results in these two Chapters could not have been obtained.
Chapter 1

Fundamental structures in invariant theory (with an eye towards the rationality problem)

1.1 Introduction

In this chapter we introduce the basic notions involved in the rationality problem for invariant function fields, and discuss the action of $\text{PGL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ on pairs of $n \times n$ matrices by simultaneous conjugation as a guiding example. We give various results for specific groups, tori, solvable groups, and special groups in the sense of Séminaire Chevalley (cf. [Se58]). We introduce the Hesselink stratification of the nullcone of a representation of a reductive group as a unifying concept for various methods for proving rationality of quotient spaces. Together with a new criterion for the stable rationality of certain quotients of Grassmannians by an $\text{SL}_n$-action (Proposition 1.3.2.10), we obtain the rationality of the moduli space of curves of degree 34 (Theorem 1.3.2.11).

In section 1.4 we give a short overview of unramified cohomology and the rationality problem over an arbitrary ground field. Apart from this section, we work over the field of complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$ throughout this text.
1.2 The rationality problem

1.2.1 Quotients and fields of invariants

Let $G$ be a linear algebraic group over $\mathbb{C}$ acting (morphically) on an algebraic variety $X$.

**Definition 1.2.1.1.** A quotient of $X$ by the action of $G$, denoted by $X/G$, is any model of the field $\mathbb{C}(X)^G$ of invariant rational functions; a quotient is thus uniquely determined up to birational equivalence, and since we are interested in birational properties of $X/G$ here, we will also refer to it as *the* quotient of $X$ by $G$.

Note that $\mathbb{C}(X)^G$ is certainly always finitely generated over $\mathbb{C}$, since it is a subfield of $\mathbb{C}(X)$ which is finitely generated over $\mathbb{C}$. In the context of fields there is no fourteenth problem of Hilbert ([Nag], [Stein], [Muk1])!

Of course one would like $X/G$ to parametrize generic $G$-orbits in $X$ to be able to apply geometry.

**Definition 1.2.1.2.** If $V$ is a $G$-variety, then a variety $W$ together with a morphism $\pi : V \to W$ is called a geometric quotient if

1. $\pi$ is open and surjective,
2. the fibres of $\pi$ are precisely the orbits of the action of $G$ on $V$,
3. for all open sets $U \subset W$, the map $\pi^* : \mathcal{O}_W(U) \to \mathcal{O}_V(\pi^{-1}(U))^G$ is an isomorphism.

One then has the following theorem due to Rosenlicht ([Ros], Thm. 2).

**Theorem 1.2.1.3.** There exists a nonempty $G$-stable open subset $U \subset X$ in every $G$-variety $X$ such that there is a geometric quotient for the action of $G$ on $U$.

For a modern proof, see [Po-Vi] or [Gross].

**Definition 1.2.1.4.** (1) An algebraic variety $X$ is called rational if there exists a birational map $X \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}^n$ for some $n$.

(2) $X$ is called stably rational if there exists an integer $n$ such that $X \times \mathbb{P}^n$ is rational.
(3) $X$ is called unirational if there exists a dominant map $\mathbb{P}^n \rightarrow X$ for some $n$.

Clearly, $(1) \implies (2) \implies (3)$ and the implications are known to be strict ([A-M], [B-CT-S-SwD]). Since $(1)-(3)$ are properties of the function field $\mathbb{C}(X)$, we will also occasionally say that $\mathbb{C}(X)$ is rational, stably rational or unirational. There are other well-known notions capturing properties of varieties which are close to the rational varieties, notably retract rationality ([Sa2]) and rational connectedness ([Koll]), which we have no use for here. We can now state the main problem which we are concerned with in this work.

**Problem 1.2.1.5.** Let $G$ be a connected linear algebraic group, and let $V$ be a $G$-representation. $V$ is always assumed to be finite-dimensional.

1. Is $V/G$ rational?
2. Is $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$ rational?

**Remark 1.2.1.6.** (1) The existence of stably rational, non-rational varieties shows that the answer to the preceding problem is clearly no if $V$ is replaced by an arbitrary rational variety; just take $X$ non-rational such that $X \times \mathbb{C}^*$ is rational, and let the multiplicative group $\mathbb{G}_m$ act on the second factor of $X \times \mathbb{C}^*$ such that $(X \times \mathbb{C}^*)/\mathbb{G}_m$ is birational to $X$.

2. By the results of Saltman ([Sal]), the answer to (1) is likewise no if $G$ is not assumed to be connected; $G$ can even be taken to be a finite solvable group acting on $V$ via its regular representation.

3. The rationality of $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$ implies the rationality of $V/G$. One uses the following theorem of Rosenlicht [Ros].

**Theorem 1.2.1.7.** If $G$ is a connected solvable group acting on a variety $X$, then the quotient map $X \rightarrow X/G$ has a rational section $\sigma : X/G \rightarrow X$.

In our case we have the quotient map $V/G \rightarrow \mathbb{P}(V)/G$ for the action of the torus $T = \mathbb{C}^*$ by homotheties on $V/G$. If $T_{\text{ineff}}$ is the ineffectivity kernel for the action of $T$ on $V/G$, the action of $T/T_{\text{ineff}}$ on $V/G$ is generically free ($T_{\text{ineff}}$ coincides with the so-called stabilizer in general
CHAPTER 1. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM IN INARIANT THEORY

position for a torus action, [Po-Vi], §7.2). Hence by Theorem 1.2.1.7, the preceding quotient map is a locally trivial $T/T_{\text{ineff}}$-principal bundle in the Zariski topology, so that $V/G$ is birational to $\mathbb{P}(V)/G \times T/T_{\text{ineff}}$ which is rational if $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$ is.

(4) $\mathbb{P}(V \oplus \mathbb{C})/G$ (trivial $G$-action on $\mathbb{C}$) is birational to $V/G$: Map $v \in V$ to $[(v, 1)]$ in $\mathbb{P}(V \oplus \mathbb{C})$.

One (and my main) motivation for Problem 1.2.1.5 comes from the fact that many moduli spaces in algebraic geometry are of the form $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$. But a solution to Problem 1.2.1.5 or parts of it typically has diverse applications throughout algebra, representation theory and geometry. We discuss one famous and guiding example in detail to illustrate this.

Let $n$ be positive integer, $G = \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$, and let $V = \mathfrak{gl}_n \oplus \mathfrak{gl}_n$ be two copies of the adjoint representation of $G$ so that $V$ is the space of pairs of $n \times n$-matrices $(A, B)$ and $g \in G$ acts on $V$ by simultaneous conjugation:

$$g : (A, B) = (gAg^{-1}, gBg^{-1}).$$

Let $K_n := \mathbb{C}(V)^G$. The question whether $K_n$ is rational is a well-known open problem. $K_n$ is known to be unirational for all $n$, stably rational if $n$ is a divisor of 420, rational for $n = 2, 3, 4$. Excellent surveys are [For02], [LeBr]. Here we just want to show how the field $K_n$ shows up in several areas of mathematics and discuss some approaches to Problem 1.2.1.5 for $K_n$.

- Let $\text{Bun}_{\mathbb{P}^2}(k, n)$ be the moduli space of stable rank $k$ vector bundles on $\mathbb{P}^2$ with Chern classes $c_1 = 0$, $c_2 = n$. It is nonempty for $1 < k \leq n$. Then

$$\mathbb{C}(\text{Bun}_{\mathbb{P}^2}(k, n)) \simeq K_d(t_1, \ldots, t_N)$$

where the $t_i$ are new indeterminates, $d = \gcd(k, n)$ and $N = 2nk - k^2 - d^2$. In particular, for $k = n$, the field $K_n$ is the function field of the moduli space of stable rank $n$ vector bundles on $\mathbb{P}^2$ with $c_1 = 0$, $c_2 = n$. See [Kat91].

The above identification arises as follows: From the monad description of vector bundles on $\mathbb{P}^2$ one knows that $\mathbb{C}(\text{Bun}_{\mathbb{P}^2}(k, n)) \simeq \mathbb{C}(S_k)^G$ where $S_k$ consists of pairs $(A, B)$ of matrices such that the eigenvalues of $A$ are pairwise distinct and the rank of the commutator of $A$ and $B$ is equal to $k$. One then uses sections and the no-name lemma (see chapter 2) to prove the above isomorphism ([Kat91]).
1.2. **THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM**

- For details on the following see [Pro67], [Pro76] and [Pro]. Let $X = (x_{ij})$ and $Y = (y_{ij})$ be two generic $n \times n$-matrices (the $x_{ij}$ and $y_{ij}$ are commuting indeterminates), and let $R$ be the subring generated by $X$ and $Y$ inside the ring of $n \times n$ matrices with coefficients in $\mathbb{C}[x_{ij}; y_{ij}]$. $R$ is called a ring of generic matrices. Let $D$ be its division ring of fractions, $C$ the centre of $D$. An element in the center of $R$ is a scalar matrix $p \cdot \text{Id}$ with $p$ a polynomial in $x_{ij}$ and $y_{ij}$ which is necessarily a polynomial invariant of pairs of matrices. $C$ is the field of quotients of the center of $R$, thus it is a subfield of $K_n$. On the other hand, it is known that $K_n$ is generated by elements

$$\text{tr}(M_1 M_2 \ldots M_{j-1} M_j)$$

with $M_1 M_2 \ldots M_{j-1} M_j$ an arbitrary word in the matrices $A$ and $B$ (so each $M_i$ is either equal to $A$ or $B$). Since $D$ is a central simple algebra of dimension $n^2$ over its centre $C$, the trace of every element of $D$ lies in $C$. Thus $K_n$ is contained in $C$, and thus equals the centre of the generic division ring $D$.

[Pro67] also shows that if $\bar{C}$ is the Galois extension of $C$ obtained by adjoining the roots of the characteristic polynomial of $X$ to $C$, then the Galois group is the symmetric group $\mathfrak{S}_n$, $[\bar{C} : C] = n!$ and $\bar{C}$ is a purely transcendental extension of $C$. This was a stimulus to study the rationality properties of $K_n$ as a fixed field of $\mathfrak{S}_n$ acting on a rational function field over $C$ ([For79], [For80]).

- $K_d$ is the function field of the relative degree $g - 1$ Jacobian $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1} \to |O_{\mathbb{P}^2}(d)|_{\text{smooth}}$ over the family $|O_{\mathbb{P}^2}(d)|_{\text{smooth}} \subset |O_{\mathbb{P}^2}(d)|$ of smooth projective plane curves of degree $d$. Here $g = (1/2)(d-1)(d-2)$ is the genus of a smooth plane curve of degree $d$. $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1}$ parametrizes pairs $(C, \mathcal{L})$ consisting of a smooth plane curve of degree $d$ and a line bundle $\mathcal{L}$ of degree $g - 1$ on $C$. See [Beau00], section 3.

We will discuss in a little more detail now how the description of $K_d$ as the function field of a relative Jacobian over a family of plane curves arises, and show how this can be used to give a simple geometric proof of the rationality of $K_3$ due to Michel van den Bergh.

The field $K_d$ is related to $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1}$ via the following theorem on representations of degree $d$ plane curves as linear determinants.
Theorem 1.2.1.8. Let $C$ be a smooth plane curve of degree $d$, $\text{Jac}_{C}^{g-1}$ its degree $g-1$ Jacobian, $\Theta \subset \text{Jac}_{C}^{g-1}$ the theta-divisor corresponding to degree $g-1$ line bundles on $C$ which have nonzero global sections. For each $\mathcal{L} \in \text{Jac}_{C}^{g-1}\setminus \Theta$, there is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^2}(-2)^d \xrightarrow{A} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^2}(-1)^d \longrightarrow \mathcal{L} \longrightarrow 0$$

with $A$ a matrix of linear forms such that $\det A = F$ where $F$ is a defining equation of $C$, $I_{C} = (F)$. Conversely, every matrix $A$ of linear forms on $\mathbb{P}^2$ with $\det A = F$ gives rise to an exact sequence as before where $\mathcal{L}$ (the cokernel of $A$) is a line bundle on $C$ with $\mathcal{L} \in \text{Jac}_{C}^{g-1}\setminus \Theta$.

Proof. As is well known, the following are equivalent for a coherent sheaf on $\mathbb{P}^n$:

- $\Gamma_i(\mathcal{F}) := \bigoplus_{i\in \mathbb{Z}} H^0(\mathbb{P}^n, \mathcal{F}(i))$ is a Cohen-Macaulay module over the homogeneous coordinate ring $S$ of $\mathbb{P}^n$.

- The sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ is locally Cohen-Macaulay and has trivial intermediate cohomology: $H^j(\mathbb{P}^n, \mathcal{F}(t)) = 0 \ \forall 1 \leq j \leq \dim \text{Supp}(\mathcal{F}) - 1, \ \forall t \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Such a sheaf is called **arithmetically Cohen Macaulay** (ACM).

Now let $\mathcal{L}$ be a degree $g-1$ line bundle on $C$ with $H^0(C, \mathcal{L}) = 0$. Put $\mathcal{M} := \mathcal{L}(1)$. The ACM condition is vacuous for line bundles on $C$ ($\mathcal{M}_x, x \in C$, is of course always Cohen Macaulay since $C$ is a reduced hypersurface). Moreover, one has

$$H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(-1)) = H^1(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(-1)) = 0. \quad (1.1)$$

The vanishing of $H^1$ comes from Riemann-Roch which yields $\chi(\mathcal{L}) = \chi(\mathcal{M}(-1)) = 0$.

Since $\mathcal{M}$ is ACM, $\dim \text{Supp}(\mathcal{M}) + \text{proj.dim}\mathcal{M} = \dim \mathbb{P}^2$ by the Auslander-Buchsbaum formula, whence by Hilbert’s syzygy theorem, $\mathcal{M}$ has a minimal graded free resolution

$$0 \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} \mathcal{O}(-f_i) \xrightarrow{A} \bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} \mathcal{O}(-e_i) \longrightarrow \mathcal{M} \longrightarrow 0$$

where, moreover, one has $e_i \geq 0$ for all $i$ since $H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(-1)) = 0$. The support of $\mathcal{M}$, the curve $C$, is defined by $\det A = 0$ set-theoretically, whence
1.2. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM

det $A$ is a power of $F$. If one localizes $A$ at the generic point of $C$, the above exact sequence together with the structure theorem of matrices over a principal ideal domain yields det $A = F$.

Now condition 1.1 yields that one has $e_i = 0$, all $i$, and $f_j = 1$, all $j$. Namely, the condition $H^1(C, \mathcal{M}(-1)) = 0$ means that $\mathcal{M}$ is a 0-regular sheaf in the sense of Castelnuovo-Mumford regularity ([Mum2]) whence

$\mathcal{M}$ is spanned by $H^0(\mathcal{M})$ and for all $j \geq 0$

$$H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{O}(1)) \otimes H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(j)) \rightarrow H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(j + 1))$$

is surjective.

Thus $\mathcal{M}$ has the minimal graded free resolution

$$0 \rightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} \mathcal{O}(-f_i) \xrightarrow{A} \bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathcal{M} \rightarrow 0$$

with $r = h^0(\mathcal{M})$. We get the exact sequence

$$H^1(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{M}(-1)) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{O}(f_i - 2)) \rightarrow H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{O}(-2))^r$$

which together with the fact that the $f_i$ must be positive (the map induced by $\bigoplus_{i=1}^{r} \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ on $H^0$ is an isomorphism) implies that we must have $f_i = 1$ for all $i$. It also follows that $d = r$ since det $A = F$.

Conversely, suppose that $A$ is a $d$ by $d$ matrix of linear forms on $\mathbb{P}^2$ with det $A = F$ where $F$ is a defining equation of the smooth curve $C$. Then one has an exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(-2)^d \rightarrow \mathcal{O}(-1)^d \rightarrow \mathcal{L} \rightarrow 0$$

where $\mathcal{L}$ is an ACM sheaf on $C$ of rank 1, thus a line bundle. By the exact sequence, $H^0(\mathcal{L}) = H^1(\mathcal{L}) = 0$ whence deg $\mathcal{L} = g - 1$, by Riemann-Roch. □

**Corollary 1.2.1.9.** Let $V_d$ be the vector space of $d$ by $d$ matrices of linear forms on $\mathbb{P}^2$. $GL_d(\mathbb{C}) \times GL_d(\mathbb{C})$ acts on $V_d$ by $(M_1, M_2) \cdot A := M_1AM_2^{-1}$. Then $V_d/GL_d(\mathbb{C}) \times GL_d(\mathbb{C})$ is birational to $\mathcal{J}ac_{d-1}^g$, the relative Jacobian of degree $g - 1$ line bundles over the space of smooth degree $d$ curves $C$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$. 
CHAPTER 1. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM IN INVARIANT THEORY

Writing $A$ in $V_d$ as

$$A = A_0x_0 + A_1x_1 + A_2x_2, \quad A_i \in \text{Mat}_{d \times d}(\mathbb{C}),$$

we may identify $V_d$ with the space of triples $(A_0, A_1, A_2)$ of $d \times d$ scalar matrices $A_i$ where $(M_1, M_2) \in \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C})$ acts as

$$(M_1, M_2) \cdot (A_0, A_1, A_2) = (M_1A_0M_2^{-1}, M_1A_1M_2^{-1}, M_1A_2M_2^{-1}).$$

The subvariety

$$\{(\text{Id}, B_1, B_2) \mid B_1, B_2 \in \text{Mat}_{d \times d}(\mathbb{C})\} \subset \text{Mat}_{d \times d}(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{Mat}_{d \times d}(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{Mat}_{d \times d}(\mathbb{C})$$

is a $(\text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C}), \text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C}))$-section in the sense of Chapter 2, 2.2.1. Hence $K_d$, the field of invariants for the action of $\text{GL}_d(\mathbb{C})$ by simultaneous conjugation on pairs of matrices, is the function field of $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1}$.

Remark 1.2.1.10. Instead of $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1}$ it is occasionally useful to work with other relative Jacobians with the same function field $K_d$: since a line in $\mathbb{P}^2$ cuts out a divisor of degree $d$ on a smooth plane curve $C$ of degree $d$, we have for $d$ odd

$$\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1} \simeq \mathcal{J}ac_d^0$$

since $g - 1 = \frac{1}{2}d(d - 3)$; also, in general,

$$\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1} \simeq \mathcal{J}ac_d^{(\frac{d}{2})}.$$

Also note that $\mathcal{J}ac_d^0$ is rational since it is birational to a (birationally trivial) projective bundle over $\text{Sym}^d\mathbb{P}^2$ which is rational, but this yields no conclusion for $\mathcal{J}ac_d^{g-1}$.

Theorem 1.2.1.11. The field $K_3$, i.e. the function field of $\mathcal{J}ac_3^0$, is rational.

Proof. We follow [vdBer]. We have to prove that the variety $\mathcal{J}ac_3^0$, parametrizing pairs $(C, \mathcal{L})$, where $C$ is a smooth plane cubic and $\mathcal{L}$ is a line bundle of degree $0$ on $C$, is rational. Fix once and for all a line $l \subset \mathbb{P}^2$. Let $\mathcal{L}$ be represented by a divisor $D$ of degree $0$ on $C$. For a general curve $C$, $l$ intersects $C$ in three points $p_1, p_2, p_3$ (uniquely defined by $C$ up to order), and since by Riemann Roch $h^0(C, \mathcal{O}(p_i + D)) = 1$, there are uniquely determined points
1.2. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM

$q_1$, $q_2$, $q_3$ on $C$ with $p_i + D \equiv q_i$, the symbol $\equiv$ denoting linear equivalence. Thus

$$q_i + p_j + D \equiv q_j + p_i + D \implies q_i + p_j \equiv q_j + p_i \forall i, j \in \{1, 2, 3\},$$

and if $r_{ij}$ denotes the third point of intersection of the line $p_i q_j$ through $p_i$ and $q_j$ with $C$, clearly

$$p_i + q_j + r_{ij} \equiv p_j + q_i + r_{ji},$$

whence $r_{ij} \equiv r_{ji}$, and by Riemann Roh in fact $r_{ij} = r_{ji}$. Thus $r_{ij} = \overline{p_i q_j} \cap \overline{p_j q_i}$ lies on $C$, and we get nine points: $p_1$, $p_2$, $p_3$, $q_1$, $q_2$, $q_3$, and $r_{12}$, $r_{13}$, $r_{23}$.

Conversely, given three arbitrary points $p_1$, $p_2$, $p_3$ on $l$, and three further points $q_1$, $q_2$, $q_3$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$, we may set for $i < j$ $r_{ij} := \overline{p_i q_j} \cap \overline{p_j q_i}$ and find a cubic curve $C$ through all of the $p_i$, $q_j$, $r_{ij}$. Then $D := q_1 - p_1$ is a degree 0 divisor on $C$. Applying the preceding construction, we get back the points we started with.

However note that the cubic curve $C$ through $p_i$, $q_j$, $r_{ij}$ as before is not unique: generally, there is a whole $\mathbb{P}^1$ of such curves $C$. This is because any cubic $C$ passing through the eight points $p_1$, $p_2$, $p_3$, $q_1$, $q_2$, $q_3$, $r_{12}$, $r_{13}$ passes through the ninth point $r_{23}$ since

$$q_1 + p_2 + r_{12} \equiv p_1 + q_2 + r_{12} \quad \text{and} \quad q_1 + p_3 + r_{13} \equiv p_1 + q_3 + r_{13}$$

implies $p_2 + q_3 \equiv p_3 + q_2$ on $C$

whence the intersection point $r_{23} = \overline{p_2 q_3} \cap \overline{p_3 q_2}$ necessarily lies on $C$. By explicit computation one may check that for generic choice of the $p_i$ and $q_j$ one gets indeed a pencil of cubic curves $C$.

The above can be summarized as follows:

- Let $\mathcal{P}$ be the parameter space inside $l^3 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3 \times \mathbb{P}H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{O}(3))$ consisting of triples $((p_1, p_2, p_3), (q_1, q_2, q_3), C)$ where the $p_i$ are three points on $l$, the $q_j$ are three further points in $\mathbb{P}^2$, and $C$ is a cubic curve through the $p_i$, $q_j$, and $r_{ij} := \overline{p_i q_j} \cap \overline{p_j q_i}$. Let the symmetric group $\mathfrak{S}_3$ act on $\mathcal{P}$ via

$$\sigma \cdot ((p_1, p_2, p_3), (q_1, q_2, q_3), C)$$

$$:= ((p_{\sigma(1)}, p_{\sigma(2)}, p_{\sigma(3)}), (q_{\sigma(1)}, q_{\sigma(2)}, q_{\sigma(3)}), C).$$

Then $\mathcal{J}ac_3^0$ is birational to $\mathcal{P}/\mathfrak{S}_3$. 
Let $Q$ be the parameter space $l^3 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3$ of three points $p_i$ on $l$ and three additional points $q_i$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$. $S_3$ acts on $Q$:

$$\sigma \cdot ((p_1, p_2, p_3), (q_1, q_2, q_3)) := ((p_{\sigma(1)}, p_{\sigma(2)}, p_{\sigma(3)}), (q_{\sigma(1)}, q_{\sigma(2)}, q_{\sigma(3)})).$$

We have a forgetful map $P \rightarrow Q$ (the field of rational functions $\mathbb{C}(P)$ is a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}(Q)$ given by adjoining the solutions of a set of linear equations). Passing to the quotients, we get a map $\pi : P/S_3 \rightarrow Q/S_3$. Since the action of $S_3$ on $Q$ is generically free, $\pi$ is generically a $\mathbb{P}^1$-bundle (in the classical topology, i.e., a conic bundle).

To conclude the proof, it suffices to remark that the conic bundle $\pi$ has a rational section, hence is birationally trivial: indeed, one just has to fix one further point $x \in \mathbb{P}^2$, and assigns to points $((p_1, p_2, p_3), (q_1, q_2, q_3))$ the triple $((p_1, p_2, p_3), (q_1, q_2, q_3), C)$ where $C$ is the unique cubic passing through $p_i$, $q_j$, $r_{ij} := \overline{p_ip_j} \cap \overline{p_jq_i}$ and the point $x$. Moreover, the base $Q/S_3$ is clearly rational: since the action of $S_3$ on $\mathbb{C}^3 \oplus \mathbb{C}^3 \oplus \mathbb{C}^3$ by permuting the factors is generically free, one sees from the no-name lemma (cf. Chapter 2, subsection 2.2.2) and the existence of sections for torus actions 1.2.1.7, that $\mathbb{C}(l^3 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3)^{S_3}$ is a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P}^2)^{S_3}$ which is rational.

This proof is more geometric (and easier from my point of view) than the one given in [For79]. Since the projective geometry of plane quartics is quite rich, we would like to ask whether one can also obtain the result of [For80] in this way.

**Problem 1.2.1.12.** Can one prove the rationality of $K_d$ using its identification with $\text{Jac}_d^2$ and the classical projective geometry of plane quartics?

The following remark shows that the stable rationality of $K_d$ does not follow from a straightforward argument that is close at hand.

**Remark 1.2.1.13.** Put $k = \binom{d}{2}$ and in $\text{Sym}^k \mathbb{P}^2 \times \mathbb{P}(H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, O(d)))$ consider the incidence correspondence $X$ given by the rule that $k$ unordered points in $\text{Sym}^k \mathbb{P}^2$ lie on a plane curve of degree $d$ in $\mathbb{P}(H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, O(d)))$. $X$ is generically the projectivisation of a vector bundle over $\text{Sym}^k \mathbb{P}^2$ hence rational. On the other hand, one has also the natural map $X \rightarrow \text{Jac}_d^k$, assigning to a pair $(D, C)$ the point $([D], [C])$ in $\text{Jac}_d^k$, which makes $X$ a $\mathbb{P}^N$-bundle in the classical or étale topology over the dense open subset $U \subset \text{Jac}_d^k$, consisting of
pairs $(|D|, C)$ with $|D|$ a non-special divisor class. However, unfortunately, this is not a projective bundle in the Zariski topology: if, to the contrary, this was the case, let $\sigma : \mathcal{J}ac^k_d \to X$ be a rational section. Then, if $u : U_d \to |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}}$ is the universal curve, the pull-back of $(|D|, \sigma(|D|))$ on $\mathcal{J}ac^k_d \times |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}} X$ to $\mathcal{J}ac^k_d \times |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}} U_d$ would give a universal divisor or Poincaré line bundle on $\Omega \times V u^{-1}(V)$ where $V \subset |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}}$ is some dense open set, and $\Omega$ some dense open set in $\mathcal{J}ac^k_d|_V$. But by results of Mestrano and Ramanan ([Me-Ra], Lemma 2.1 and Corollary 2.8),

\begin{align*}
\text{a Poincare bundle on } \mathcal{J}ac^k_d \times |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}} U_d \text{ (or on } \Omega \times |\mathcal{O}(d)|_{\text{smooth}} u^{-1}(V) \text{ as above) exists if and only if } 1 - g + r \text{ and } d \text{ are coprime, where } g = \frac{1}{2}(d - 1)(d - 2) \text{ is the genus.}
\end{align*}

Hence in all the cases we are interested in, $X \to \mathcal{J}ac^k_d$ is generically a non-trivial Severi-Brauer scheme.

### 1.2.2 Results for specific groups

Here we collect some results in the direction of Problem 1.2.1.5 which express exclusively properties of the group $G$ acting, for specific groups $G$, and are independent of the particular $G$-representation $V$.

The following theorem is due to Miyata [Mi].

**Theorem 1.2.2.1.** Let $G$ be isomorphic to a subgroup of the Borel group $B_n \subset \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ of invertible upper triangular matrices. Then the field of invariant rational functions $\mathbb{C}(V)^G$ for the $G$-module $V = \mathbb{C}^n$ is a purely transcendental extension of $\mathbb{C}$.

**Proof.** The proof is an immediate application of the following

**Claim.** If $k$ is a field and $G$ a group of automorphisms of the polynomial ring $k[t]$ in one indeterminate which transforms $k$ into itself, then there is an invariant $p \in k[t]^G$ such that $k(t)^G = k^G(p)$.

To prove the claim, note that $k(t)^G$ is the field of fractions of $k[t]^G$: write $f \in k(t)^G$ as $f = u/v$, $u, v \in k[t]$ without common factor. After passing to the reciprocal if necessary, we may assume $\deg(u) \geq \deg(v) > 0$ and apply the division algorithm in $k[t]$ to write

$$u = qv + r,$$
q, r ∈ k[t], deg(r) < deg(v) whence q and r are uniquely determined by these requirements. Since f is invariant, G acts on both u and v via a certain character χ : G → C∗, and the uniqueness of r and q implies that r is a weight vector of G for the character χ, and q is an (absolute) G-invariant. Since
\[ \frac{u}{v} = q + \frac{r}{v}, \frac{r}{v} \in k(t)^G, \]
and \( \deg(r) + \deg(v) < \deg(u) + \deg(v) \), one obtains the statement by induction on \( \deg(u) + \deg(v) \), the case \( \deg(u) + \deg(v) = 0 \) being trivial.
Now if \( k[t]^G \subset k \), the claim is obvious. Otherwise, we take \( p \in k[t]^G \setminus k \) of minimal degree. Then if \( f \) is in \( k[t]^G \), one writes \( f = pq + r \) with \( \deg(r) < \deg(p) \) as before, and by uniqueness of quotient and remainder, \( q \) and \( r \) are \( G \)-invariant polynomials in \( k[t] \). Thus, by the choice of \( p, r \in k^G \) and \( \deg(q) < \deg(f) \). Again by induction on the degree of \( f \) we obtain \( f \in k^G[p] \). This means \( k[t]^G = k^G[p] \), and since we have seen that \( k(t)^G \) is the field of fractions of \( k[t]^G \) the assertion of the claim follows.
To prove the theorem, one applies the claim to \( k = \mathbb{C}(x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}), t = x_n \) where \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \) are coordinates on \( V = \mathbb{C}^n \), and concludes by induction on the number of variables. \[ \square \]

**Corollary 1.2.2.2.** If \( V \) is a finite dimensional linear representation of either

- an abelian group \( G \subset \text{GL}(V) \) consisting of semi-simple elements (e.g. if \( G \) is finite)
- or a connected solvable group \( G \),

then \( \mathbb{C}(V)^G \) is a purely transcendental extension of \( \mathbb{C} \).

**Proof.** Simultaneous diagonalizability of commuting semisimple elements, or Lie-Kolchin theorem, respectively. \[ \square \]

**Remark 1.2.2.3.** Note that the statement and proof of Theorem 1.2.2.1 remain valid if one works, instead of over \( \mathbb{C} \), over a possibly nonclosed ground field; the Corollary 1.2.2.2 becomes false in general, however, because one needs the algebraic closedness to make the actions triangular: for example, let \( G \) be a cyclic group of order \( p = 47 \), and let \( G \) act on \( \mathbb{Q}(x_1, \ldots, x_p) \) by permuting the variables cyclically. It is known (cf. [Swan]) that \( \mathbb{Q}(x_1, \ldots, x_p)^G \) is not rational over \( \mathbb{Q} \).
1.2. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM

For semi-simple groups the only truly complete rationality result is the following due to P. Katsylo and F. Bogomolov.

**Theorem 1.2.2.4.** The moduli spaces \( \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d \mathbb{C}^2)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) of \( d \) unordered points in \( \mathbb{P}^1 \) are rational for all \( d \).

See [Kat84], [Bo-Ka], [Bogo2] for a proof. It should be mentioned that this result is also used in the recent work of Kim and Pandharipande [Ki-Pa]. There they prove the rationality of the moduli space

\[
\overline{M}_{0,n}(X, \beta)
\]

of \( n \)-pointed genus 0 stable maps of class \( \beta \in H_2(X, \mathbb{Z}) \) into a rational homogeneous variety \( X = G/P \). Here \( \overline{M}_{g,n}(X, \beta) \) parametrizes data

\[
[\mu : C \to X; p_1, \ldots, p_n]
\]

where \( C \) is a complex, projective, connected, reduced, nodal curve of arithmetic genus \( g \), \( p_1, \ldots, p_n \) are distinct points in the smooth locus of \( C \), the map \( \mu \) has no infinitesimal automorphisms and \( \mu_*[C] = \beta \).

Despite the very small number of general rationality results, one has some satisfactory information with regard to the important question of existence of rational sections. We have already seen Rosenlicht’s theorem 1.2.1.7. Let us recall quickly the theory of special groups cf. [Se56], [Se58], [Groth58].

**Definition 1.2.2.5.** Let \( G \) be an algebraic group, and \( \pi : P \to X \) a morphism of algebraic varieties. Let \( P \) be equipped with a right \( G \)-action and suppose \( \pi \) is constant on \( G \) orbits. Then \( P \) is called a \( G \)-principal bundle in the étale topology (or locally isotrivial fibre space with typical fibre \( G \) or \( G \)-torsor) if for every point \( x \in X \) there is a Zariski open neighborhood \( U \ni x \) and an étale cover \( f : U' \to U \) such that the pull-back \( f^*(P|_U) \to U' \) is \( G \)-isomorphic to the trivial fibering \( U'' \times G \to U' \).

\( P \) is called a \( G \)-principal bundle in the Zariski topology if furthermore every \( x \in X \) has a Zariski open neighborhood \( U \) such that \( P|_U \) is trivial.

**Definition 1.2.2.6.** An algebraic group \( G \) is called special if every \( G \)-principal bundle in the étale topology is Zariski locally trivial.

The main results of interest to us are summarized in the following

**Theorem 1.2.2.7.**

(a) The general linear group \( \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \) is special.
A closed subgroup $G \subset \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ is special if and only if the quotient map $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ is a Zariski locally trivial $G$-principal bundle (equivalently, if and only if $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ has a rational section).

The groups $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}), \text{Sp}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and all connected linear solvable groups are special.

If $G$ is a linear algebraic group, $H$ a normal subgroup, and if $H$ and $G/H$ are special, then $G$ is special. In particular, any connected linear algebraic group the semisimple part of which is a direct product of groups of types $\text{SL}$ or $\text{Sp}$ is special.

Proof. (a): The proof uses the method of taking averages of group cocycles. Let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal bundle, and let $X' \to X$ be a finite étale cover, which we can assume to be Galois with Galois group $\Gamma$, such that $P$ becomes trivial on $X'$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X' \times G & \longrightarrow & P \\
\pi' & \downarrow & \pi \\
X' & \overset{f}{\longrightarrow} & X
\end{array}
$$

We recall the bijective correspondence between the set of isomorphism classes of $G$-principal bundles (in the étale topology) on $X$ which become trivial when pulled-back to $X'$ and the elements of the nonabelian group cohomology set $H^1(\Gamma, \text{Mor}(X', G))$ with marked point. Here $\text{Mor}(X', G)$ is the group of morphisms of $X'$ into $G$; and $\Gamma$, which we assume to operate on the right on $X'$, acts on $\text{Mor}(X', G)$ (on the left) by

$$(\sigma \cdot \varphi)(x') := \varphi(x' \cdot \sigma).$$

Elements of $H^1(\Gamma, \text{Mor}(X', G))$ are by definition 1-cocycles of $\Gamma$ with values in $\text{Mor}(X', G)$ modulo an equivalence relation; a 1-cocycle is a map $\sigma \mapsto \varphi_\sigma$ from $\Gamma$ to $\text{Mor}(X', G)$ satisfying

$$\varphi_{\sigma\tau} = (\varphi_\tau)^\sigma \varphi_\sigma$$

where $(\cdot)^\sigma$ denotes the action of $\sigma$. Two 1-cocycles $(\varphi_\sigma), (\varphi'_\sigma)$ are cohomologous if there is an $a \in \text{Mor}(X', G)$ such that

$$\varphi'_\sigma = a^\sigma \varphi_\sigma a^{-1}, \quad \text{all } \sigma.$$
1.2. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM

Now in the above pull-back diagram $X' \times G$ is a Galois cover of $P$ with Galois group $\Gamma$, and $P = (X' \times G)/\Gamma$. $\Gamma$ acts on $X' \times G$ compatibly with the projection $\pi'$ to $X'$ and the operation of $G$ whence

$$(x', g) \cdot \sigma = (x' \cdot \sigma, \varphi_\sigma(x') \cdot g)$$

and the associativity gives the required cocycle condition for $(\varphi_\sigma)$. Conversely, the datum of a 1-cocycle $(\varphi_\sigma)$ determines an operation of $\Gamma$ on $X' \times G$ and one may define $P$ on $X$ as the quotient. The condition that two 1-cocycles are cohomologous means precisely that the $G$-principal bundles so obtained are isomorphic. Note that the condition that $(\varphi_\sigma)$ and $(\varphi'_\sigma)$ are cohomologous means precisely that the isomorphism $(x', g) \mapsto (x', a(x')g)$ between trivial $G$-principal bundles on $X'$ descends to the $G$-principal bundles on $X$ defined by $(\varphi_\sigma)$ and $(\varphi'_\sigma)$ on $X$, respectively.

We turn to the proof of (a) of Theorem 1.2.2.7. Thus let $P \to X$ be a $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$-principal bundle in the étale topology, and let $U \ni x$ be an open neighborhood, $f : U' \to U$ a Galois cover with group $\Gamma$ on which $P$ is trivial. The above considerations show that, if $\mathcal{O}_{f^{-1}(x)}$ is the semi-local ring of the fibre over $x$, then the set of isomorphism classes of $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$-principal bundles on a Zariski neighborhood of $x$ which become trivial on a Zariski neighborhood of $f^{-1}(x)$ are identified with the cohomology set $H^1(\Gamma, \text{GL}_n(\mathcal{O}_{f^{-1}(x)}))$. Let $x'$ be a point of the fibre $f^{-1}(x)$ and choose a matrix $b \in \text{Mat}_{n \times n}(\mathcal{O}_{f^{-1}(x)})$ which is the identity in $x'$ and the zero matrix in the other points of $f^{-1}(x)$. If $(\varphi_\sigma)$ is a 1-cocycle representing the germ of $P$ in $x$ one puts

$$a = \sum_{\tau \in \Gamma} \tau(b)\varphi_\tau.$$

By definition, this is invertible in each point of the fibre $f^{-1}(x)$, thus belongs to $\text{GL}_n(\mathcal{O}_{f^{-1}(x)})$. Since

$$a^\sigma \varphi_\sigma = \sum_{\tau \in \Gamma} \sigma(\tau(b))(\varphi_\tau)^a \varphi_\sigma = \sum_{\tau \in \Gamma} (\sigma \tau)(b)\varphi_{\sigma \tau} = a,$$

we have $a^\sigma \varphi_\sigma a^{-1} = 1$, so our $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$-principal bundle is trivial in a Zariski neighborhood of $x$.

Using the correspondence between $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$-principal bundles in the étale resp. Zariski topology and vector bundles in the étale resp. Zariski topology (given by passing to the associated fibre bundles with typical fibre $\mathbb{C}^n$, and
conversely associated frame bundles), we obtain the fact which is fundamental
to many techniques for proving rationality, that every vector bundle in the
étale topology is a vector bundle in the Zariski topology:

(b): The proof consists in the trick of extension and reduction of the
structure group.
By definition, if $G \subset \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ is special, then $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ is Zariski
locally trivial. Conversely, suppose that $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ is Zariski-
locally trivial, and let $P \to X$ be a $G$-principal bundle in the étale topology.
We have an associated fibre bundle $Q := P \times^G \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ which is a $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})$-
principal bundle in the Zariski topology by part (a).
Now $Q$ is a $G$-principal bundle in the Zariski topology over
$Q \times^{\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})} (\text{GL}_m(\mathbb{C})/G)$
because $Q$ itself is Zariski locally trivial and $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ has a ra-
tional section by assumption. Now

\[ Q \times^{\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})} (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G) = P \times^G (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G) \]

has a canonical section $\sigma : X \to P \times^G (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G)$ since $G$ leaves the
coset corresponding to the identity in $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G$ invariant. Then $P$ is the
pull-back of $Q \to P \times^G (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G)$ via $\sigma$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \longrightarrow & Q = P \times^G \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \xrightarrow{\sigma} & P \times^G (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G)
\end{array}
\]

Thus the fact that $P \to X$ is Zariski locally trivial follows from the fact that
$Q \to P \times^G (\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/G)$ has this property.

(c): For connected linear solvable groups, this follows from part (d) to
be proven below since a connected solvable group is a successive extension of
groups of type $\mathbb{G}_m$ and $\mathbb{G}_a$. Remark that both $\mathbb{G}_m$ and $\mathbb{G}_a$ are special since
$\mathbb{G}_m = \text{GL}_1(\mathbb{C})$ and the natural map $\text{GL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_2(\mathbb{C})/\mathbb{G}_a$ has a ra-
tional section. The projection $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ has a section given by
assigning to a coset $g\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ the matrix

\[ \text{diag}(\det g, 1, \ldots, 1) \, . \]

Finally, the projection $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \to \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/\text{Sp}_n(\mathbb{C})$, $n = 2m$, has a section
since $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{C})/\text{Sp}_n(\mathbb{C})$ is the space of nondegenerate skew-symmetric bilinear
forms on $\mathbb{C}^{2m}$ and the generic skew-symmetric form

$$\sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} t_{ij}(x_i y_j - y_i x_j)$$

with indeterminate coefficients $t_{ij}$ can be reduced to the canonical form

$$\sum_{k=1}^{m}(x_{2k-1} y_{2k} - y_{2k-1} x_{2k})$$

over the function field $\mathbb{C}(t_{ij})$. The usual linear algebra construction of a corresponding symplectic basis $u_1, v_1, u_2, v_2, \ldots, u_m, v_m \in \mathbb{C}(t_{ij})^{2m}$ goes through: start with any $u_1 \neq 0$, find $v_1$ with $\langle u_1, v_1 \rangle = 1$, put

$$H := \text{span}(u_1, v_1),$$

decompose $\mathbb{C}(t_{ij})^{2m} = H \oplus H^\perp$, and continue with the symplectic form $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_{H^\perp}$ in the same way. This fails for orthogonal groups since one cannot take square roots rationally.

(d): The assertion follows immediately by the application of the techniques in part (b). If $P \to X$ is a principal $G$-bundle, then the associated $G/H$-principal bundle $P \times^G (G/H) \to X$ has locally around any point of $X$ a section because $G/H$ is special. $P$ is an $H$-principal bundle over $P \times^G (G/H)$ and pulling back via the section one obtains an $H$-principal bundle $Q$ locally around any point of $X$ which is Zariski locally trivial because $H$ is special; and $P$ is just $Q \times^H G$, thus is Zariski locally trivial, too.

The second assertion follows because a connected linear algebraic group is an extension of its reductive part by the unipotent radical (connected solvable), and the reductive part an extension of the semi-simple part by a torus. 

**Remark 1.2.2.8.** Grothendieck [Groth58] has shown that the only special semi-simple groups are the products of the groups of type $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and $\text{Sp}_n(\mathbb{C})$. Serre [Se58] has shown that any special algebraic group is linear and connected.

If $X$ is a $G$-variety, $G$ a linear algebraic group, one needs a practically verifiable condition when $X \to X/G$ is generically a $G$-principal bundle.

**Definition 1.2.2.9.** (1) The action of $G$ on $X$ is called free if the morphism $G \times X \to X \times X$, $(g, x) \mapsto (gx, x)$ is a closed embedding.

(2) $G$ is said to act on $X$ with trivial stabilizers if for each point $x \in X$ the stabilizer $G_x$ of $x$ in $G$ is reduced to the identity.

Unfortunately, (1) and (2) are not equivalent. Mumford ([Mum], Ex. 0.4) gives an example of an action of the group $\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$ on a quasi-projective
variety with trivial stabilizers, but which is not free. However, when for each \( x \in U, U \subset X \) some open dense set, the stabilizers are trivial, we will nevertheless sometimes say that \( G \) acts \textit{generically freely} since this has become standard terminology. We also say more accurately that \( G \) acts with \textit{generically trivial stabilizers}.

Despite the presence of the subtlety which is displayed in Mumford’s example, one has the following result.

**Theorem 1.2.2.10.** Let \( G \) be a connected linear algebraic group acting on a variety \( X \) with trivial stabilizers and let \( X \to X/G \) be a geometric quotient. Then there is an open dense \( G \)-invariant subset \( U \subset X \) such that \( U \to U/G \) is a \( G \)-principal bundle in the \( \text{étale} \) topology.

**Proof.** We use a Seshadri cover ([Sesh72], [BB] §8.4): given a connected linear algebraic group which acts on a variety \( X \) with finite stabilizers, there exists a finite morphism \( \kappa : X_1 \to X \) with the following properties:

- \( X_1 \) is a normal variety and \( \kappa \) a (ramified) Galois cover with Galois group \( \Gamma \) acting on \( X_1 \).
- There exists a free action of \( G \) on \( X_1 \), commuting with the action of \( \Gamma \), such that \( \kappa \) is \( G \)-equivariant.
- There exists a good geometric quotient \( \pi : X_1 \to X_1/G \) with \( X_1/G \) a prevariety (not necessarily separated), and \( \pi \) is a Zariski locally trivial \( G \)-principal bundle.

"Good" geometric quotient means that \( \pi \) is affine. Now assume that in our original situation \( V \to V/G \) is a geometric quotient, \( V \subset X \) open. Shrinking \( V/G \) (and \( V \)) we can find a \( G \)-invariant open set \( U \subset X \) such that in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\kappa^{-1}(U) & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & U \\
\downarrow{\pi} & & \downarrow \\
\kappa^{-1}(U)/G & \xrightarrow{\kappa} & U/G
\end{array}
\]

all arrows are geometric quotients, \( \kappa^{-1}(U)/G \) is a variety, and \( \kappa \) is \( \text{étale} \). It follows that \( U \to U/G \) is a \( G \)-principal bundle in the \( \text{étale} \) topology since it becomes one (even a Zariski locally trivial one) after the \( \text{étale} \) base change \( \tilde{\kappa} \) (the hypothesis that \( G \) acts with trivial stabilizers on \( X \) implies that the above diagram is a fibre product). \( \square \)
Corollary 1.2.2.11. Let a connected linear algebraic group $G$ whose semi-simple part is a direct product of groups of type $SL$ or $Sp$ act on a rational variety $X$ with generically trivial stabilizers. Then $X/G$ is stably rational.

Proof. By Rosenlicht’s Theorem 1.2.1.3 and the preceding Theorem 1.2.2.10, there is a nonempty open $G$-invariant subset $U \subset X$ such that a geometric quotient $U \to U/G$ exists and is a $G$-principal bundle in the étale topology. This is Zariski locally trivial by Theorem 1.2.2.7, (d). Thus to conclude the proof it suffices to remark that a connected linear algebraic group (over $\mathbb{C}$) is a rational variety: take a Borel subgroup $B$ in $G$ and consider the $B$-principal bundle $G \to G/B$ over the (rational) flag variety $G/B$. Note that $B$ is rational since it is a successive extension of groups $\mathbb{G}_a$ and $\mathbb{G}_m$. \hfill $\square$

However, Corollary 1.2.2.11, as it stands, is not applicable when we consider for example the action of $PGL_3(\mathbb{C})$ on the space $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)$ of plane quartics. One has the following easy extension.

Corollary 1.2.2.12. Let $V$ be a linear representation of a connected linear algebraic group with semi-simple part a direct product of groups $SL$ and $Sp$. Suppose that the generic stabilizer of $G$ in $V$ is trivial. Then $\mathbb{P}(V) \to \mathbb{P}(V)/G$ has a rational section.

Proof. By Rosenlicht’s Theorem 1.2.1.7, we see that $V/G \to \mathbb{P}(V)/G$ has a rational section, and composing with a rational section of $V \to V/G$ and the projection $V \to \mathbb{P}(V)$, we obtain a rational section of $\mathbb{P}(V) \to \mathbb{P}(V)/G$. \hfill $\square$

1.3 Cones and homogeneous bundles

Over the last decades a variety of different techniques have been developed to make progress on the rationality problem 1.2.1.5 in certain special cases. These methods will be discussed in the next chapter. However, one may be left with the impression that this is a somewhat incoherent arsenal of tricks, and no conceptual framework has yet been found which Problem 1.2.1.5 fits into. The purpose of this section is therefore to discuss certain concepts which seem to have an overall relevance to Problem 1.2.1.5, and in particular, show how the Hesselink stratification of the nullcone and the desingularizations of the strata in terms of homogeneous vector bundles give a strategy for approaching Problem 1.2.1.5.
1.3.1 Torus orbits and the nullcone

$G$ will be a reductive linear algebraic group throughout this section, $T \subset G$ a fixed maximal torus. $X^*(T)$ is the group of characters $\chi : T \to \mathbb{C}^*$ of $T$, and $X_*(T)$ the group of cocharacters or one-parameter subgroups (1-psg) $\lambda : \mathbb{C}^* \to T$ of $T$. There is the perfect pairing of lattices

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : X^*(T) \times X_*(T) \to \mathbb{Z}$$

with $\langle \chi, \lambda \rangle$ defined by $\chi(\lambda(s)) = s^{(\chi, \lambda)}$ for $s \in \mathbb{C}^*$. Let $V$ be a $T$-module with weight space decomposition

$$V = \bigoplus_{\chi \in X^*(T)} V_\chi.$$

**Definition 1.3.1.1.** Let $v = \sum_{\chi \in X^*(T)} v_\chi$ be the decomposition of a vector $v \in V$ with respect to the weight spaces of $V$. Let $\text{supp}(v)$ denote the set of those $\chi$ for which $v_\chi \neq 0$ (the support of $v$), let $\text{Wt}(v)$ be the convex hull of $\text{supp}(v)$ in the vector space $X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q} := X^*(T) \otimes \mathbb{Q}$ (the weight polytope of $v$), and $C(v)$ the closed convex cone generated by the vectors in $\text{supp}(v)$ in $X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$.

The geometry of $T$-orbit closures in the affine or projective cases in $V$ resp. $\mathbb{P}(V)$ is completely encoded in $\text{supp}(v)$ and $C(v)$ resp. $\text{Wt}(v)$ in the following way.

**Theorem 1.3.1.2.** (1) If $F$ is a face of the cone $C(v)$, put

$$v_F := \sum_{\chi \in \text{supp}(v) \cap F} v_\chi.$$

Then the map $F \mapsto T \cdot v_F$ is a bijection of the set of faces of $C(v)$ and the set of $T$-orbits in $\overline{T \cdot v}$. If $F_1$ and $F_2$ are faces of $C(v)$, then

$$F_1 \subset F_2 \iff T \cdot v_{F_1} \subset \overline{T \cdot v_{F_2}}.$$

(2) If $v \neq 0$ is in $V$, and $X_v := \overline{T \cdot [v]} \subset \mathbb{P}(V)$ is the torus orbit closure of $[v]$ in $\mathbb{P}(V)$, then the $T$-orbits on $X_v$ are in bijection with the faces of the weight polytope $\text{Wt}(v)$: for any point $[w] \in X_v$, $\text{Wt}(w)$ is a face of $\text{Wt}(v)$. For $[w_1], [w_2] \in X_v$ one has $T \cdot [w_1] \subset \overline{T \cdot [w_2]}$ if and only if $\text{Wt}(w_1) \subset \text{Wt}(w_2)$. 
1.3. CONES AND HOMOGENEOUS BUNDLES

See [B-S], Prop. 7, p. 104, and [GKZ], Chapter 5, Prop. 1.8, for a proof. Since $G$ is reductive, it is well known that $\mathbb{C}[V]^G$ is finitely generated and closed orbits are separated by $G$-invariants (e.g. [Muk], Thm. 4.51, Thm. 5.3), thus for $v \in V$ there is a unique closed orbit in $G \cdot v$. Thus we can state the following Hilbert-Mumford theorem.

**Theorem 1.3.1.3.** Let $G$ be a reductive group, $V$ a (finite dimensional) $G$-representation, and pick $v \in V$. Let $X$ be the unique closed orbit in $\overline{G \cdot v}$. Then there is a 1-psg $\lambda : \mathbb{C}^* \rightarrow G$ such that $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \lambda(t) \cdot v$ exists and is in $X$.

**Proof.** It follows from part (1) of Theorem 1.3.1.2 that every torus orbit in the torus orbit closure of $v$ can be reached as the limit of $v$ under a suitable 1-psg (the 1-psg corresponds to an integral linear form in $\text{Hom}(X^*(T), \mathbb{Z})$ defining the face $\hat{F}$ corresponding to the torus orbit we want to reach). Thus one just has to prove that there is a $g \in G$ and a torus $T \subset G$ with $T \cdot \overline{gv} \cap X \neq \emptyset$. One has the Cartan decomposition $G = K \cdot T \cdot K$ of $G$ where $K$ is a maximal compact subgroup of $G$, and $T$ the complexification of a maximal torus in $K$.

Suppose that $\overline{T \cdot gv} \cap X = \emptyset$ for all $g$. Then, since $T$-invariants separate disjoint closed $T$-invariant subsets, one may find for each $w \in G \cdot v$ a function $I_w \in \mathbb{C}[V]^T$ which is identically 0 on $X$ and takes the value 1 in $w$. The compact set $K \cdot v$ is as it is a subset of $G \cdot v$ covered by the open sets $U_w$ in $V$ where $I_w$ does not vanish, for $w$ running through $G \cdot v$, hence it is covered by finitely many of them. The sum of the absolute values of the $I_w$’s corresponding to this finite covering family is then a continuous $T$-invariant function $s$ which is strictly positive on the compact $K \cdot v$, but 0 on $X$. But then $s$ is still strictly positive on $\overline{TK \cdot v}$ which is a contradiction: since $\overline{G \cdot v} = K \cdot \overline{TK \cdot v}$ as $K$ is compact, the fact that $\overline{TK \cdot v}$ does not meet $X$ implies that $\overline{G \cdot v}$ does not meet $X$ which is false.  

**Definition 1.3.1.4.** Suppose $v \in V$ is a vector in the $G$-representation $V$.

1. $v$ is **unstable** if $0 \in \overline{G \cdot v}$. The set of these is denoted by $\mathcal{N}_G(V)$ (the **nullcone**).

2. $v$ is **semistable** if $v$ is not unstable.

3. $v$ is **stable** if $G \cdot v$ is closed in $V$ and the stabilizer subgroup $G_v \subset G$ of $v$ is finite.
(4) \( v \) is called \( T \)-unstable if \( 0 \in \overline{T \cdot v} \), and the set of \( T \)-unstable elements is denoted by \( \mathfrak{N}_T(V) \) (the canonical cone).

**Theorem 1.3.1.5.** (1) The set \( \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \) is defined by the vanishing of all invariants in \( \mathbb{C}[V]^G \) of positive degree; \( \mathfrak{N}_T(V) \) is defined by the vanishing of all \( T \)-invariants in \( \mathbb{C}[V]^T \) of positive degree; this gives \( \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \) and \( \mathfrak{N}_T(V) \) scheme structures.

(2) A vector \( v \in V \) is \( T \)-unstable if and only if \( 0 \notin \text{Wt}(v) \). One has \( G \cdot \mathfrak{N}_T(V) = \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \). Hence \( \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \) consists of those vectors \( v \) such that the orbit \( G \cdot v \) contains an element whose weight polytope does not contain 0.

**Proof.** (1) follows immediately from the fact that \( G \)- or \( T \)-invariants separate closed orbits. The first assertion of (2) is a consequence of Theorem 1.3.1.2, (1). The fact that \( G \cdot \mathfrak{N}_T(V) = \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \) follows from Theorem 1.3.1.3. \( \square \)

**Remark 1.3.1.6.** In general, \( \mathfrak{N}_G(V) \) need neither be irreducible nor reduced nor equidimensional: in [Po92], Chapter 2 §3, it is shown that for the representation of \( \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) in the space of binary sextics \( \text{Sym}^6(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee \), the nullcone is not reduced; for the representation of \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) in the space of ternary quartics \( \text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \) the nullcone has two irreducible components of dimensions 10 and 11, respectively ([Hess79], p. 156).

**Remark 1.3.1.7.** Theorem 1.3.1.5 (2) gives a convenient graphical way for the determination of unstable vectors known to Hilbert ([Hil93], §18): for example, if \( \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) acts on binary forms of degree \( d \), \( \text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee \), in variables \( x \) and \( y \), \( T \subset \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) is the standard torus

\[
T = \begin{pmatrix} t & 0 \\ 0 & t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad t \in \mathbb{C}^*,
\]

and \( \epsilon_1 \) is the weight

\[
\epsilon_1 \left( \begin{pmatrix} t & 0 \\ 0 & t^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \right) = t,
\]

then the weight spaces are spanned by \( x^k y^{d-k} \) which is of weight \((d - 2k)\epsilon_1\), for \( k = 0, \ldots, d \). The support of a binary degree \( d \) form thus does not contain
the origin if and only if it is divisible by $x^{[d/2]+1}$ or $y^{[d/2]+1}$, so that the unstable binary degree $d$ forms are just those which have a zero of multiplicity $\geq [d/2] + 1$.

Turning to ternary forms, the representation of $\SL_3(\mathbb{C})$ in $\Sym^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ (coordinates $x$, $y$, $z$), one can use “Hilbert’s triangle”: consider in the plane an equilateral triangle $ABC$ with barycenter the origin 0. Let $\epsilon_1$, $\epsilon_2$, $\epsilon_3$ be the vectors pointing from 0 to $A$, $B$, $C$. Points of the plane with integer coordinates with respect to the basis $\epsilon_1$, $\epsilon_2$ are thus identified with the character lattice of the standard maximal torus of $\SL_3(\mathbb{C})$. For the monomial $x^ay^bz^c$, $a + b + c = d$, the point in the plane $-a\epsilon_1 - b\epsilon_2 - c\epsilon_3$ then represents the associated weight; pick a line $l$ in this plane not passing through zero, and let $H_l$ be the corresponding closed half-space in the plane not containing 0. Then a ternary degree $d$ form $f$ is unstable if, after a coordinate change, it may be written as a sum of monomials whose weights lie entirely in $H_l$ for some line $l$. In this way it is possible to obtain finitely many representatives for all possible types.

1.3.2 Stratification of the nullcone and rationality

The importance of the nullcone $\mathfrak{N}_G(V)$ for us derives from the fact that it contains a lot of rational subvarieties which are birational to homogeneous vector bundles over generalized flag varieties whose fibres are linearly embedded in $V$. We are now going to describe this.

Let $G$ be reductive as before, $T \subset G$ a maximal torus. Let $W := N_G(T)/Z_G(T)$ be the Weyl group which acts on $T$ by conjugation, hence on $X^*(T)$. Choose a $W$-invariant scalar product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ on $X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$ which takes integral values on $X^*(T)$.

Denote by $R \subset X^*(T)$ the set of roots, the set of nonzero weights of $T$ in the adjoint representation of $G$ on its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. For $\alpha \in R$ denote by $U_\alpha$ the root subgroup corresponding to $\alpha$, i.e. the unique connected $T$-invariant unipotent subgroup $U_\alpha \subset G$ with Lie algebra the one dimensional root subspace $\mathfrak{g}_\alpha$.

**Definition 1.3.2.1.** (1) For $c \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$ denote by $P_c$ the subgroup of $G$ generated by the torus $T$ and the root groups $U_\alpha$ for $\alpha \in R$ with $\langle \alpha, c \rangle \geq 0$. Furthermore, $U_c$ resp. $L_c$ will be the subgroups generated by $U_\alpha$ with $\langle \alpha, c \rangle > 0$ resp. by the torus $T$ and the root subgroups $U_\alpha$ with $\langle \alpha, c \rangle = 0$. 
(2) For $c \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$, $c \neq 0$, one denotes by $H^+(c)$ the half space \(\{x \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q} \mid \langle x-c, c \rangle \geq 0\}\) in $X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$ and by $H^0(c) = \{x \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q} \mid \langle x-c, c \rangle = 0\}$ its bounding hyperplane.

(3) For a subset $\Sigma \subset X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$ and a finite-dimensional $G$-module $V$, $V_\Sigma$ denotes the subspace of $V$ consisting of those $v \in V$ with $\text{supp}(v) \subset \Sigma$. Obviously, there are only finitely many such subspaces since the number of weight spaces in $V$ is finite.

Remark that $P_c \subset G$ is a parabolic subgroup containing $T$ (because the subset of those $\alpha \in R$ with $\langle \alpha, c \rangle \geq 0$ contains some basis for the root system $R$ and is closed with respect to addition); it follows from this observation that $L_c$ is a reductive Levi subgroup of $P_c$ containing $T$, and $U_c$ is the unipotent radical of $P_c$, $P_c = L_c \ltimes U_c$. Moreover:

**Lemma 1.3.2.2.**

(1) For $c \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}$, $c \neq 0$, the subspace $V_{H^+(c)}$ is stable under $P_c$, the subspace $V_{H^0(c)}$ is stable under the Levi subgroup $L_c$.

(2) $G \cdot V_{H^+(c)}$ is closed in $V$, and the image of the homogeneous vector bundle $G \times_{P_c} V_{H^+(c)} \to G/P_c$ under the natural $G$-map to $V$. Moreover, the nullcone can be expressed as a union (which is actually finite) of such images:

\[
\mathcal{N}_G(V) = \bigcup_{c \neq 0, c \in X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q}} G \cdot V_{H^+(c)}.
\]

**Proof.** (1) follows from the following well-known fact from the representation theory of reductive groups: if $\chi \in X^*(T)$, $v \in V_\chi$, $\alpha \in R$ and $g \in U_\alpha$, then

\[
g \cdot v - v \in \bigoplus_{t \geq 1} V_{\chi + t\alpha}.
\]

It is seen as follows: let $x_\alpha : \mathbb{G}_a \to G$ be the root homomorphism which is an isomorphism onto its image $U_\alpha$ and $t \cdot x_\alpha(k) \cdot t^{-1} = x_\alpha(\alpha(t)k) \forall t \in T, \forall k \in \mathbb{G}_a$. Then $x_\alpha(k) \cdot v$ is a polynomial in $k$ with coefficients in $V$:

\[
x_\alpha(k) \cdot v = \sum_{l=0}^{N} v_l k^l, \ \forall k \in \mathbb{C}
\]
and on the one hand, for \( t \in T \)
\[
t \cdot (x_\alpha(k) \cdot v) = \sum_{l=0}^N k^l t \cdot v_l,
\]
whereas on the other hand
\[
t \cdot (x_\alpha(k) \cdot v) = (t \cdot x_\alpha(k)t^{-1})(t v)
= x_\alpha(\alpha(t) \cdot k) \chi(t)v = \sum_{l=0}^N \alpha(t)^l k^l \chi(t) \cdot v_l.
\]
Equating coefficients in the two polynomials in \( k \) yields \( \chi(t)\alpha(t)^l \cdot v_l = t \cdot v_l \), all \( t \in T \), which together with the fact that \( v = v_0 \) (put \( k = 0 \)) gives the desired result.

(2): \( G \cdot V_{H+}(c) \) is the image of the natural \( G \)-map \( G \times_{P_c} V_{H+}(c) \to V \) which factors into the closed embedding \( i : G \times_{P_c} V_{H+}(c) \to G/P_c \times V \) given by \( i([(g, v)]) := (gP_c, g \cdot v) \), followed by the projection \( G/P_c \times V \to V \) onto the second factor which is proper since \( G/P_c \) is compact. Thus \( G \cdot V_{H+}(c) \) is closed in \( V \). The last assertion about the nullcone is an immediate consequence of Theorem 1.3.1.5, (2).

We need a criterion for when the natural \( G \)-map \( G \times_{P_c} V_{H+}(c) \to V \) is birational onto its image \( G \cdot V_{H+}(c) \).

**Theorem 1.3.2.3.** Let \( v \in V \) be a \( T \)-unstable element. Then the norm \( \| \cdot \| := \sqrt{\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle} \) induced by the \( W \)-invariant scalar product on \( X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q} \) achieves its minimum in exactly one point \( c \) of \( Wt(v) \). Thus there exists a smallest positive integer \( n \) such that \( n \cdot c \) is in \( X^*(T) \). Since \( n \cdot c \) is orthogonal to the roots of \( L_c \), it extends to a character of \( P_c \) and \( L_c \). Let \( Z_c := (\ker(n \cdot c|_{L_c}))^0 \subset L_c \) be the corresponding reductive subgroup of \( L_c \) with maximal torus \( T' = (\ker(n \cdot c \cap T))^0 \).

The space \( V_{H+}(c) \) decomposes as \( V_{H+}(c) = V_{H_0(c)} \oplus \bigoplus_{\chi \in X^*(T), \chi \in H^+ \setminus H_0(c)} V_{\chi} \).

Let \( v_0 \) be the component of \( v \) in \( V_{H_0(c)} \) with respect to this decomposition. Suppose that \( v_0 \) is not in the nullcone of \( Z_c \) in \( V_{H_0(c)} \). Then the \( G \)-map
\[
G \times_{P_c} V_{H+}(c) \to G \cdot V_{H+}(c) \subset V
\]
\( ([[(g, v')]]) \mapsto g \cdot v' \)
is birational onto \( G \cdot V_{H^+(c)} \) and the fibres of the bundle \( G \times_{P_c} V_{H^+(c)} \) are embedded as linear subspaces of \( V \).

**Proof.** All faces of the polytope \( \text{Wt}(v) \) are described by rational linear equalities and inequalities, and \( \| \cdot \|^2 \) is a rational quadratic form on \( X^*(T)_\mathbb{Q} \). By the differential criterion for extrema with boundary conditions, one gets a system of linear equations defined over \( \mathbb{Q} \) which determine \( c \).

We now use an argument in [Po-Vi] §5, due to Kirwan and Ness. Remark that the set of vectors \( u \) in \( V_{H^+(c)} \) for which \( c \) is the point of \( \text{Wt}(u) \) closest to the origin and for which the projection \( u_0 \) onto \( V_{H^0(c)} \) is not unstable for \( Z_c \) is open in \( V_{H^+(c)} \) and not empty by assumption. We denote this set by \( \Omega^+(c) \). Let \( g_1, g_2 \in G, u_1, u_2 \in \Omega^+(c) \) be such that \( g_1 u_1 = g_2 u_2 \). So that \( ([g_1, u_1]) \) and \( ([g_2, u_2]) \) in the bundle \( G \times_{P_c} V_{H^+(c)} \) map to the same image point in \( V \). It thus suffices to show that for each \( g \in G \), \( gu_1 = u_2 \) implies \( g \in P_c \).

Look at the Bruhat decomposition \( G = U_P WP_c \) where \( U_P \) is the unipotent radical of \( P_c \). We may thus write \( g = p_1 wp_2 \) with \( p_1, p_2 \in P_c \), \( w \) some (representative of an) element in \( W \). We now make the following

Claim: For each \( p \in P_c \) and every \( u \in \Omega^+(c) \), the weight polytope \( \text{Wt}(wu) \) contains the point \( c \) (one cannot ”move \( \text{Wt}(u) \) away from \( c \) with elements in \( P_c \)).

Assuming this claim for the moment, one can finish the proof as follows: rewriting \( gu_1 = u_2 \) as \( w(p_2 u_1) = p_1^{-1} u_2 \) we see that \( w \cdot c \in w \cdot \text{Wt}(p_2 u_1) = \text{Wt}(wp_2 u_1) \subset H^+(c) \). But since \( c \) is the only element of norm \( ||c|| \) in \( H^+(c) \) and \( W \) acts by isometries, we must have \( w \cdot c = c \). Thus \( P_c = P_{w,c} = wp_c w^{-1} \), whence \( w \in N_G(P_c) = P_c \).

We turn to the proof of the claim. In fact, the claim is just a reformulation of the property of the \( u \in \Omega^+(c) \) to have \( Z_c \)-semistable projection \( u_0 \) onto \( V_{H^0(c)} \) and the Hilbert-Mumford criterion in the form of Theorem 1.3.1.5, (2). Recall from above that if \( \chi \in X^*(T), v \in V_{\chi}, \alpha \in R \) and \( g \in U_\alpha \), then \( g \cdot v - v \in \bigoplus_{l \geq 1} V_{\chi + l \alpha} \), so if \( \langle \alpha, c \rangle > 0 \), then replacing \( u \) by \( f \cdot u \) for \( f \in U_\alpha \) gives \( \text{Wt}(u) \cap H^0(c) = \text{Wt}(f \cdot u) \cap H^0(c) \). Thus the weight polytope of \( u \) can be moved away from \( c \) by an element of \( P_c \) if and only if it can be moved away from \( c \) by an element of \( L_c \) and \( L_c \) is in turn generated by \( Z_c \) and a one-dimensional central subtorus in \( L_c \) (central since all roots of \( L_c \) are trivial on it). But under the restriction of characters of \( T \) to the subtorus \( T' \) which
1.3. CONES AND HOMOGENEOUS BUNDLES

is the maximal torus in $Z_c$, $H^0(c)$ maps bijectively onto $X^*(T')_Q$ and the point $c$ gets identified with the origin in $X^*(T')_Q$. Thus the weight polytope of $u$ in $X^*(T)_Q$ can be moved away from $c$ by $P_c$ if and only if the weight polytope of the projection $u_0$ of $u$ onto $V_{H^0(c)}$ can be moved away from 0 in $X^*(T')_Q$ by the action of $Z_c$. Our assumption that $u_0$ be $Z_c$-semistable exactly prevents this possibility.

Remark 1.3.2.4. Note that, though the way it was stated, Theorem 1.3.2.3 involves the choice of a $T$-unstable element $v$, and $c \in X^*(T)_Q$ is afterwards determined as the element of $Wt(v)$ of minimal length, the only important requirement is that $\mathfrak{N}_{Z_c}(V_{H^0(c)}) \neq V_{H^0(c)}$. In fact, if $c \in X^*(T)_Q$, $c \neq 0$, is any element with this property, then the set $\Omega^+(c) \subset V_{H^+(c)}$ of vectors whose projection unto $V_{H^0(c)}$ is $Z_c$-semistable is nonempty, and the weight polytopes of all these vectors must automatically contain $c$ then, and are contained in $H^+(c)$, hence $c$ is the vector of minimal distance to the origin in all those weight polytopes.

Definition 1.3.2.5. An element $c \in X^*(T)_Q$, $c \neq 0$, with $\mathfrak{N}_{Z_c}(V_{H^0(c)}) \neq V_{H^0(c)}$ is called stratifying.

The finer structure of the nullcone is described in

Theorem 1.3.2.6. Let $c \in X^*(T)_Q$ be a stratifying element. Then $G \times P_c$, $\Omega^+(c) \to G \cdot \Omega^+(c) =: \mathfrak{S}(c)$ is an isomorphism, and $G \cdot V_{H^+(c)} \subset \mathfrak{N}_G(V)$ is the closure of $\mathfrak{S}(c)$. We call $\mathfrak{S}(c_1)$ a nonzero stratum of $\mathfrak{N}_G(V)$. One has $\mathfrak{S}(c_1) = \mathfrak{S}(c_2)$ if and only if $c_1$ and $c_2$ are in the same $W$-orbit, and $\mathfrak{N}_G(V)$ is a finite disjoint union of $\{0\}$ and the nonzero strata.

See [Po-Vi], §5, [Po03]. Through the paper [Po03], an algorithm -using only the configuration of weights with multiplicities of $V$ and the roots of $G$ in $X^*(T)_Q$- is now available to determine completely the family of stratifying elements resp. strata. We pass over all this, since for our immediate purposes, Theorem 1.3.2.3 is sufficient.

We will now describe how Theorem 1.3.2.3 can be used to develop a general technique for approaching the rationality problem 1.2.1.5. This was suggested in [Shep89] and we will develop it in greater detail.

Theorem 1.3.2.7. Let $\Gamma \subset G$ be connected reductive groups, $V$ a $G$-module, and $M$ a $\Gamma$-submodule of $V$ which is contained in the nullcone $\mathfrak{N}_G(V)$ of $G$
in $V$. Let $\mathcal{S}(c)$, $0 \neq c \in X^*(T)_Q$, $T \subset G$ a maximal torus, be a stratum of $\mathfrak{N}_G(V)$. Let

$$G \times_{P_c} V_{H^+(c)} \to G \cdot V_{H^+(c)} = \mathcal{S}(c) \subset V$$

be the associated desingularization of $\mathcal{S}(c)$ by the homogeneous vector bundle

$$G \times_{P_c} V_{H^+(c)} \xrightarrow{\pi} G/P_c.$$

Assume:

(a) $\mathcal{S}(c) \cap M$ is dense in $M$ and the rational map $\pi : \mathbb{P}(M) \dashrightarrow G/P_c$ induced by the bundle projection is dominant.

(b) $(G/P_c)/\Gamma$ is stably rational in the sense that $(G/P_c)/\Gamma \times \mathbb{P}^r$ is rational for some $r \leq \dim \mathbb{P}(M) - \dim G/P_c$.

(c) Let $Z$ be the kernel of the action of $\Gamma$ on $G/P_c$: assume $\Gamma/Z$ acts generically freely on $G/P_c$, $Z$ acts trivially on $\mathbb{P}(M)$, and there exists a $\Gamma/Z$-linearized line bundle $\mathcal{L}$ on the product $\mathbb{P}(M) \times G/P_c$ cutting out $\mathcal{O}(1)$ on the fibres of the projection to $G/P_c$.

Then $\mathbb{P}(M)/\Gamma$ is rational.

**Proof.** Let $Y := G/P_c$, $X :=$ (the closure of) the graph of $\pi$, $p : X \to Y$ the restriction of the projection which (maybe after shrinking $Y$) we may assume (by (a)) to be a projective space bundle for which $\mathcal{L}$ is a relatively ample bundle cutting out $\mathcal{O}(1)$ on the fibres. The main technical point is the following result from descent theory ([Mum], §7.1): by Theorem 1.2.2.10 there are nonempty open subsets $X_0 \subset X$ and $Y_0 \subset Y$ such that we have a fibre product square with the bottom horizontal arrow a $\Gamma/Z$-principal bundle:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_0 & \longrightarrow & X_0/(\Gamma/Z) \\
p \downarrow & & \hat{p} \downarrow \\
Y_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0/(\Gamma/Z)
\end{array}
$$

and by [Mum], loc. cit., $\mathcal{L}$ descends to a line bundle $\hat{\mathcal{L}}$ on $X_0/(\Gamma/Z)$ cutting out $\mathcal{O}(1)$ on the fibres of $\hat{p}$. Hence $\hat{p}$ is also a Zariski locally trivial projective bundle (of the same rank as $p$). By (b), it now follows that $\mathbb{P}(M)/\Gamma$ is rational. \qed
Example 1.3.2.8. Let $E$ be a complex vector space of odd dimension $n$ ($n \geq 3$) and consider the action of the group $G = \text{SL}(E)$ on $V = \Lambda^2(E)$. We choose a basis $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ of $E$ so that $\text{SL}(E)$ is identified with the group $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ of $n \times n$ matrices of determinant one. Let

$$T = \text{diag}(t_1, \ldots, t_n), \quad t_i \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \prod_{i=1}^{n} t_i = 1$$

be the standard diagonal torus, and denote by $\epsilon_i \in X^*(T)$ the $i$th coordinate function of $T$

$$\epsilon_i(\text{diag}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)) = t_i, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n.$$ 

In $\mathbb{R}^n$ with its standard scalar product consider the hyperplane $H := \{(1,1,\ldots,1)\}^\perp$. We make the identifications

$$\epsilon_1 = (n - 1, -1, -1, \ldots, -1), \quad \epsilon_2 = (-1, n - 1, -1, \ldots, -1), \ldots,$$

$$\epsilon_n = (-1, -1, -1, \ldots, n - 1) \quad (\text{then } \epsilon_i \in H \quad \forall i = 1, \ldots, n)$$

whence $X^*(T) \otimes \mathbb{R}$ becomes identified with $H$, $X^*(T)$ being the subset of vectors $a_1\epsilon_1 + \cdots + a_n\epsilon_n$ with $a_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ for all $i$, and $X^*(T)_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is similarly defined by the condition $a_i \in \mathbb{Q}$. The restriction of the standard Euclidean scalar product on $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $H$ is then a $W$-invariant scalar product, integral on $X^*(T)$. Denote it by $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. Note that the Weyl group $W$ is the symmetric group $\mathfrak{S}_n$ on $n$ letters and acts by permuting the $\epsilon_i$. The roots of $(G, T)$ are then

$$\alpha_{ij} := \epsilon_i - \epsilon_j, \quad 1 \leq i, j \leq n, \quad i \neq j$$

with corresponding root subgroups

$$U_{\alpha_{ij}} = \{ A \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \mid A = \text{Id} + r \cdot E_{ij} \} ,$$

with $E_{ij}$ the $n \times n$ elementary matrix with a single nonzero entry, namely 1, in the $(i, j)$-spot. Thus the $\epsilon_i$ form the vertices of a simplex in $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $H$ is then $\Lambda^2(E)$. The roots are the pairwise differences of the vectors leading from the origin to the vertices. The weights of $T$ in $\Lambda^2(E)$ are obviously

$$\pi_{kl} = \epsilon_k + \epsilon_l, \quad 1 \leq k < l \leq n, \quad V_{\pi_{kl}} = \mathbb{C} \cdot (\epsilon_k \wedge \epsilon_l).$$

Define an element $c \in X^*(T)_{\mathbb{Q}}$ by

$$c := \frac{2}{n - 1} (1, 1, 1, \ldots, 1, -(n - 1)) \in H.$$
We consider as above the affine hyperplane $H^0(c)$ perpendicular to $c$ and passing through $c$, and the positive half space $H^+(c)$ it defines. The following facts concerning the relative position of $H^0(c)$ and the weights $\pi_{kl}$ and roots $\alpha_{ij}$ are easily established by direct calculation:

- $\pi_{kl} \in H^+(c) \iff \pi_{kl} \in H^0(c) \iff 1 \leq k < l \leq n - 1$,
- $\langle \alpha_{ij}, c \rangle = 0 \iff 1 \leq i, j \leq n - 1, i \neq j$,
- $\langle \alpha_{ij}, c \rangle > 0 \iff 1 \leq i < j = n$.

Note that then in the above notation one has for the group $P_c$

$$P_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} M & a \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : M \in \mathbb{C}^{(n-1)\times(n-1)}, a \in \mathbb{C}^{(n-1)\times1}, b \in \mathbb{C}, 0 \in \mathbb{C}^{1\times(n-1)} \right\}.$$ 

Similarly, the reductive group $L_c$ is

$$L_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} M & 0^t \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : M \in \text{GL}_{n-1}(\mathbb{C}), b \in \mathbb{C}^n, 0 \in \mathbb{C}^{1\times(n-1)} \right\}.$$ 

Now $\frac{n-1}{2} c = \epsilon_1 + \cdots + \epsilon_{n-1}$. This extends to the character of $L_c$ which maps an element of $L_c$ to the determinant of $M$. Hence the group $Z_c$ is

$$Z_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} M & 0^t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : M \in \text{SL}_{n-1}(\mathbb{C}), 0 \in \mathbb{C}^{1\times(n-1)} \right\}.$$ 

The action of $Z_c$ on $V_{H^0(c)}$ is equivalent to the standard action of $\text{SL}_{n-1}(\mathbb{C})$ on $\Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^{n-1})$ and the nullcone for this action is not the whole space (there exists the Pfaffian). Hence $c$ is stratifying.

The flag variety $G/P_c$ can be identified with the Grassmannian $\text{Grass}(n - 1, E)$ of $n - 1$-dimensional subspaces in $E$, or dually, $\mathbb{P}(E^\vee)$, the projective space of lines in $E^\vee$. The open set $G \cdot \Omega^+(c)$ in $\Lambda^2(E)$ can be identified with the two forms represented by skew-symmetric matrices of maximal rank $n - 1$. Every vector in $\Lambda^2(E)$ is unstable. If we view $\Lambda^2(E)$ as $\Lambda^2(E^\vee)^\vee$, i.e. skew-forms on $E^\vee$, then the bundle projection

$$G \times_{P_c} \Omega^+(c) \to G/P_c$$

is identified with the map which assigns to a skew-form $\omega$ of maximal rank its image under the linear map

$$E^\vee \to E, \quad e \mapsto \omega(e, \cdot),$$
1.3. CONES AND HOMOGENEOUS BUNDLES

(an element of $\text{Grass}(n - 1, E)$), or dually, its kernel in $\mathbb{P}(E^\vee)$. The associated method for proving rationality is called the 2-form trick and appears in [Shep], Prop.8.

**Example 1.3.2.9.** Let $E$ and $F$ be complex vector spaces with $\dim E =: n > \dim F =: m$. As in the previous example, for the action of $G = \text{SL}(E) \times \text{SL}(F)$ on $V = \text{Hom}(E, F)$, every vector is unstable (there is a dense orbit). Choose bases $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ for $E$ and $f_1, \ldots, f_m$ for $F$, so that $\text{SL}(E) \times \text{SL}(F) \simeq \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C})$. If $T^E$ resp. $T^F$ denote the standard maximal tori of diagonal matrices in $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ resp. $\text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C})$, then

$$T = T^E \times T^F$$

is a maximal torus of $G$. For $(\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}), T^E)$ and $(\text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}), T^F)$, we use the definitions and concrete realization of weight lattices as in Example 1.3.2.8, except that we endow now all objects with superscripts $E$ and $F$ to indicate which group we refer to: thus we write, for example, $\epsilon_i^E$, $\epsilon_j^F$, $W^E$, $X^*(T^E) \otimes \mathbb{R} \simeq H^E$, and so forth.

Then we have $X^*(T) = X^*(T^E) \times X^*(T^F)$ and we may realize $X^*(T) \otimes \mathbb{R}$ as

$$H := H^E \times H^F \subset \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m \simeq \mathbb{R}^{n+m}$$

with scalar product

$$\langle (x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \rangle := \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle^E + \langle y_1, y_2 \rangle^F, \quad x_1, x_2 \in H^E, \ y_1, y_2 \in H^F,$$

which is invariant under the Weyl group $W = W^E \times W^F \simeq \mathcal{S}_n \times \mathcal{S}_m$ of $G$ acting by permutations of the $\epsilon_i^E$ and $\epsilon_j^F$ separately. The weights of $V$ with respect to $T$ are given by

$$\pi_{kl} := (-\epsilon_k^E, \epsilon_l^F), \ 1 \leq k \leq n, \ 1 \leq l \leq m, \quad V_{\pi_{kl}} = \mathbb{C} \cdot (\epsilon_k^E \otimes f_l)$$

where under the isomorphism $E^\vee \otimes F \simeq \text{Hom}(E, F)$, the vector $\epsilon_k^E \otimes f_l$ corresponds to a matrix with only one nonzero entry $1$ in the $(l, k)$ position. Note that the $\pi_{kl}$ form the vertices of a polytope in $H$ which is the product of two simplices. The roots of $(G, T)$ in $H$ are the vectors

$$(\alpha_{p,q}^E, 0), \ 1 \leq p, \ q \leq n, \ p \neq q, \quad (0, \alpha_{r,s}^F), \ 1 \leq r, \ s \leq m, \ r \neq s$$
The disjoint union of the root systems of $\text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and $\text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C})$ in the orthogonal subspaces $H^E$ and $H^F$, and the root subgroups in $G$ are then

\[
U_{(\alpha^E_{pq}, 0)} = U_{\alpha^E_p} \times \{\text{Id}_m\}, \quad U_{(0, \alpha^F_r)} = \{\text{Id}_n\} \times U_{\alpha^F_r}.
\]

Now define $c \in X^*(T)_Q$ by

\[
c := \left(-\frac{1}{m}(n-m, n-m, \ldots, n-m, -m, -m, \ldots, -m), 0\right) \in H^E \times H^F
\]

where there are $m$ entries with value $n-m$ followed by another $n-m$ entries with value $-m$ in the row vector in the first component. In fact, $c = -\frac{1}{m}((\epsilon^E_1, 0) + \cdots + (\epsilon^E_m, 0))$. The following facts are easily verified by direct computation:

- $\pi_{kl} \in H^0(c) \iff \pi_{kl} \in H^+(c) \iff 1 \leq k \leq m$,
- $\langle (0, \alpha^E_{rs}), c \rangle = 0 \forall r, s, 1 \leq r, s \leq m, r \neq s$,
- $\langle (\alpha^E_{pq}, 0), c \rangle = 0 \iff 1 \leq p, q \leq m, p \neq q$ or $m + 1 \leq p, q \leq n, p \neq q$,
- $\langle (\alpha^E_{pq}, 0), c \rangle > 0 \iff 1 \leq q \leq m, m + 1 \leq p \leq n$.

Hence we get

\[
P_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ B & C \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : A \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}, B \in \mathbb{C}^{(n-m) \times m}, C \in \mathbb{C}^{(n-m) \times (n-m)} \right\} \times \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}),
\]

and

\[
L_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & C \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : A \in \text{GL}_m(\mathbb{C}), C \in \text{GL}_{n-m}(\mathbb{C}) \right\} \times \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}),
\]

\[
Z_c = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & C \end{pmatrix} \in \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C}) : A \in \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}), C \in \text{SL}_{n-m}(\mathbb{C}) \right\} \times \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}),
\]

since $-m \cdot c$ extends to the character of $L_c$ which maps an element of $L_c$ to the determinant of $A$. The action of $Z_c$ on $V_{H^0(c)}$ is equivalent to the standard action of $\text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_m(\mathbb{C})$ on $\text{Hom}(\mathbb{C}^m, \mathbb{C}^m)$, whence $\mathcal{R}_{Z_c}(V_{H^0(c)}) \neq V_{H^0(c)}$ since an endomorphism has a determinant. Thus $c$ is stratifying.

The flag variety $G/P_c$ is isomorphic to the Grassmannian $\text{Grass}(n-m, E)$.
1.3. CONES AND HOMOGENEOUS BUNDLES

of \((n - m)\)-dimensional subspaces of \(E\), and \(G \cdot \Omega^+(c) \subset \text{Hom}(E, F)\) is the open subset of homomorphisms of full rank \(m\). The projection

\[ G \times_{P_c} \Omega^+(c) \to G/P_c \]

is the map which associates to a homomorphism \(\varphi \in \text{Hom}(E, F)\) its kernel \(\ker(\varphi) \in \text{Grass}(n - m, E)\). In the case \(n = m + 1\), this is a projective space, and the associated method for proving rationality is called the double bundle method, which appeared first in [Bo-Ka]. We discuss this in more detail in Chapter 2.

The discussion in Example 1.3.2.9 shows that it will be very convenient to have results for the stable rationality of Grassmannians \(\text{Grass}(k, E)/G\) (where \(E\) is a representation of the reductive group \(G\)) analogous to Corollary 1.2.2.11. One has

**Proposition 1.3.2.10.** Let \(E\) be a representation of \(G = \text{SL}_p(\mathbb{C})\), \(p\) prime. Let \(X := \text{Grass}(k, E)\) be the Grassmannian of \(k\)-dimensional subspaces of \(E\). Assume:

- The kernel \(Z\) of the action of \(G\) on \(\mathbb{P}(E)\) coincides with the center \(\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}\) of \(\text{SL}_p(\mathbb{C})\) and the action of \(G/Z\) on \(\mathbb{P}(E)\) is almost free. Furthermore, the action of \(G\) on \(E\) is almost free and each element of \(Z\) not equal to the identity acts homothetically as multiplication by a primitive \(p\)th root of unity.
- \(k \leq \dim E - \dim G - 1\).
- \(p\) does not divide \(k\).

Then \(X/G\) is stably rational, in fact, \(X/G \times \mathbb{P}^{\dim G + 1}\) is rational.

**Proof.** Let \(C_X \subset \Lambda^k(E)\) be the affine cone over \(X\) consisting of pure (com-\(tely decomposable) k\)-vectors. We will show that under the assumptions of the proposition, the action of \(G\) on \(C_X\) is almost free. This will accomplish the proof since \(C_X/G\) is generically a torus bundle over \(X/G\) hence Zariski-locally trivial; and the group \(G = \text{SL}_p(\mathbb{C})\) is special.

Let \(e_1 \wedge e_2 \wedge \cdots \wedge e_k\) be a general \(k\)-vector in \(\Lambda^k(E)\). Since \(k \leq \dim E - \dim G - 1\) and, in \(\mathbb{P}(E)\), \(\dim(G \cdot [e_i]) = \dim G\) since \(Z\) is finite and \(G/Z\) acts almost freely on \(\mathbb{P}(E)\), the \(k - 1\)-dimensional projective linear subspace spanned by \(e_1, \ldots, e_k\) in \(\mathbb{P}(E)\) will intersect the \(\dim E - 1 - \dim G\) codimensional orbit
$G \cdot [e_1]$ only in $[e_1]$. Hence, if an element $g \in G$ stabilizes $e_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge e_k$, it must lie in $Z$. Thus $g \cdot (e_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge e_k) = \zeta^k(e_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge e_k)$ for a primitive $p$-th root of unity $\zeta$ if $g \neq 1$. But since $p$ does not divide $k$, the case $g \neq 1$ cannot occur. \[\square\]

As an application we prove the following result which had not been obtained by different techniques so far.

**Theorem 1.3.2.11.** The moduli space $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^{34}(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ of plane curves of degree 34 is rational.

**Proof.** As usual, $V(a, b)$ denotes the irreducible $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-module whose highest weight has numerical labels $a$, $b$ (we choose the standard diagonal torus and Borel subgroup of upper triangular matrices for definiteness). Then

$$V(0, 34) \subset \text{Hom}(V(14, 1), V(0, 21)),$$

and $\dim V(14, 1) = 255$, $\dim V(0, 21) = 253$, so we get a map

$$\pi : \mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) \longrightarrow \text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))$$

$\dim \mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) = 629$ and $\dim \text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1)) = 506$. Moreover, Proposition 1.3.2.10 and its proof show that $\text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{P}^9$ is rational, and the action of $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C}) = \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})/Z$, where $Z$ is the center of $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$, is almost free on $\text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))$. Moreover, let $\mathcal{O}_P(1)$ be the $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-linearized line bundle induced by the Plücker embedding on $\text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))$:

$$\text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1)) \subset \mathbb{P}(\Lambda^2(V(14, 1))).$$

If we choose on $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) \times \text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))$ the bundle $\mathcal{L} := \mathcal{O}(1) \boxtimes \mathcal{O}_P(2)$, all the assumptions of Theorem 1.3.2.7 except the dominance of $\pi$ have been checked (compare also Example 1.3.2.9). The latter dominance follows from an explicit computer calculation, where one has to check that for a random element $x_0$ in $V(0, 34)$ the corresponding homomorphism in $\text{Hom}(V(14, 1), V(0, 21))$ has full rank, and the fibre of $\pi$ over $\pi([x_0])$ has the expected dimension $\dim \mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) - \dim \text{Grass}(2, V(14, 1))$. \[\square\]
Remark 1.3.2.12. As far as we can see, the rationality of $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 34))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ cannot be obtained by direct application of the double bundle method, i.e. by applying Theorem 1.3.2.7 in the case discussed in Example 1.3.2.9 with base of the projection a projective space. In fact, a computer search yields that the inclusion $V(0, 34) \subset \text{Hom}(V(30, 0), V(0, 4) \oplus V(5, 9))$ is the only candidate to be taken into consideration for dimension reasons: $\dim V(30, 0) = \dim(V(0, 4) \oplus V(5, 9)) + 1$ and $\dim \mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) > \dim \mathbb{P}(V(30, 0))$. However, on $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)) \times \mathbb{P}(V(30, 0))$ there does not exist a $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-linearized line bundle cutting out $\mathcal{O}(1)$ on the fibres of the projection to $\mathbb{P}(V(30, 0))$; for such a line bundle would have to be of the form $\mathcal{O}(1) \boxtimes \mathcal{O}(k), k \in \mathbb{Z}$, and none of these is $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-linearized: since $\mathcal{O} \boxtimes \mathcal{O}(1)$ is $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-linearized it would follow that the $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ action on $H^0(\mathbb{P}(V(0, 34)), \mathcal{O}(1)) \simeq V(34, 0)$ factors through $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ which is not the case.

1.4 Overview of some further topics

Here we give a brief description of additional topics connected with the rationality problem which are too important to be omitted altogether, but are outside the focus of the present text.

1.4.1 Cohomological obstructions to rationality and fields of definition

The first concerns cohomological obstructions to rationality. One of the first examples was given by Artin and Mumford [A-M] who showed

Proposition 1.4.1.1. The torsion subgroup $T \subset H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$ is a birational invariant of a smooth projective variety $X$. In particular, $T = 0$ if $X$ is rational.

They use this criterion to construct unirational irrational threefolds $X$, in fact $X$ with 2-torsion in $H^3(X, \mathbb{Z})$. Later, David Saltman [Sa] proved that there are invariant function fields $\mathbb{C}(X)$ (where $X = V/G$) of the action of a finite group $G$ which are not purely transcendental over the ground field $\mathbb{C}$ using as invariant the unramified Brauer group $\text{Br}_n(\mathbb{C}(X)/\mathbb{C})$ which can be shown to equal the cohomological Brauer group $\text{Br}(\bar{X}) = H^2_{\text{et}}(\bar{X}, \mathbb{G}_m)$ of a smooth projective model $\bar{X}$ of $\mathbb{C}(X)$. Here $\mathbb{G}_m$ denotes the sheaf (for the étale site on any scheme) defined by the standard multiplicative group
scheme. Moreover, in the sequel μₙ will, as usual, denote the subsheaf of \( \mathbb{G}_m \)
defined by \( \mu_n(U) = \) group of \( n \)th roots of 1 in \( \Gamma(U, \mathcal{O}_U) \). The unramified
point of view was developed further in [Bogo3].
The notion of unramified cohomology generalizes the previous two examples.
A particular feature of the unramified view point is that it bypasses the need
to construct a smooth projective model for a given variety \( X \), working directly
with the function field of \( X \), or rather with all smooth projective models of
\( X \) at once. Below, \( k \) is an algebraically closed field of any characteristic.

**Definition 1.4.1.2.** Let \( X \) be a variety over \( k \) and \( n > 0 \) an integer prime
to \( \text{char}(k) \). The \( i \)-th unramified cohomology group of \( X \) with coefficients in
\( \mu_n^{\otimes j} \) is by definition

\[
H^i_{\text{ur}}(k(X)/k, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) := \bigcap_{A \in \text{DVR}(k(X))} \left( \text{im} \left( H^i_{\text{ét}}(A, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) \to H^i_{\text{ét}}(k(X), \mu_n^{\otimes j}) \right) \right)
\]

where \( A \) runs over all rank one discrete valuation rings \( k \subset A \subset k(X) \) with
quotient field \( k(X) \). The cohomology groups are to be interpreted as étale
cohomology

\[
H^i_{\text{ét}}(A, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) := H^i_{\text{ét}}(\text{Spec}(A), \mu_n^{\otimes j}),
\]

\[
H^i_{\text{ét}}(k(X), \mu_n^{\otimes j}) := H^i_{\text{ét}}(\text{Spec}(k(X)), \mu_n^{\otimes j}) .
\]

It is known that if \( k(X) \) and \( k(Y) \) are stably isomorphic over \( k \), then

\[
H^i_{\text{ur}}(k(X)/k, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) \simeq H^i_{\text{ur}}(k(Y)/k, \mu_n^{\otimes j})
\]

and in particular, the higher unramified cohomology groups are trivial if \( X \)
is stably rational (see [CT95]).

Clearly, if \( G = \text{Gal}(k(X)^*/k(X)) \) is the absolute Galois group of \( K := k(X) \)

\[
H^i_{\text{ét}}(\text{Spec}(k(X)), \mu_n^{\otimes j}) = H^i(G, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) = H^i(K, \mu_n^{\otimes j}) ,
\]

the latter being a Galois cohomology group [Se97] (\( \mu_n \) the group of \( n \)th roots
of 1 in \( K^* \)). There is an alternative description of unramified cohomology in
terms of residue maps in Galois cohomology which is often useful. We would
like to be as concrete as possible, so recall first that given a profinite group
\( G \) and a discrete \( G \)-module \( M \) on which \( G \) acts continuously, and denoting
by $C^n(G, M)$ the set of all continuous maps from $G^n$ to $M$, we define the cohomology groups $H^q(G, M)$ as the cohomology of the complex $C^*(G, M)$ with differential

$$d : C^n(G, M) \to C^{n+1}(G, M),$$

$$(df)(g_1, \ldots, g_{n+1}) = g_1 \cdot f(g_2, \ldots, g_{n+1})$$

$$+ \sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^i f(g_1, \ldots, g_i, g_{i+1}, \ldots, g_{n+1})$$

$$+ (-1)^{n+1} f(g_1, \ldots, g_n)$$

and this can be reduced to the finite group case since

$$H^q(G, M) = \lim_{\rightarrow} H^q(G/U, M^U),$$

the limit taken over all open normal subgroups $U$ in $G$. We recall from [Se97], Appendix to Chapter II, the following:

**Proposition 1.4.1.3.** If $G$ is a profinite group, $N$ a closed normal subgroup of $G$, $\Gamma$ the quotient $G/N$, and $M$ a discrete $G$-module with trivial action of $N$, then one has exact sequences for all $i \geq 0$

$$0 \to H^i(\Gamma, M) \xrightarrow{\pi} H^i(G, M) \xrightarrow{r} H^{i-1}(\Gamma, \text{Hom}(N, M)) \to 0$$

provided the following two assumptions hold:

(a) The extension

$$1 \to N \to G \to \Gamma \to 1$$

splits.

(b) $H^i(N, M) = 0$ for all $i > 1$.

Here $\pi$ is induced through the map $G \to \Gamma$ by functoriality and $r$ is the residue map which has an explicit description as follows: an element $\alpha \in H^i(G, M)$ can be represented by a cocycle $f = f(g_1, \ldots, g_i) \in C^i(G, M)$ which is normalized (i.e. equal to 0 if one $g_j$ is 1) and which only depends on $g_1$ and the classes $\gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_i$ of $g_2, \ldots, g_i$ in $\Gamma$. If then $\gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_i$ are elements in
one defines \( r(f)(\gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_i) \) to be the element of \( \text{Hom}(N, M) \) (continuous homomorphisms of \( N \) to \( M \)) given by

\[
r(f)(\gamma_2, \ldots, \gamma_i)(n) := f(n, g_2, \ldots, g_i), \quad n \in N.
\]

The \((i - 1)\)-cochain \( r(f) \) is checked to be an \((i - 1)\)-cocycle of \( \Gamma \) with values in \( \text{Hom}(N, M) \), and its class \( r(\alpha) \) in \( H^{i-1}(\Gamma, \text{Hom}(N, M)) \) is independent of \( f \). The proof uses the spectral sequence of group extensions; item (b) is used to reduce the spectral sequence to a long exact sequence, and (a) to split the long exact sequence into short exact ones of the type given. Details may be found in [Se97].

Reverting to our original set-up we have the field extension \( K/k = k(X)/k \) and a discrete valuation ring \( A \subset K \) with \( k \subset A \) and such that \( K \) is the field of fractions of \( A \). To \( A \) there is an associated completion \( \hat{K}_A \). Assume \( \hat{K}_A \) of residue characteristic 0 for simplicity. The absolute Galois group of \( \hat{K}_A \) splits as \( \hat{Z} \oplus G_A \) with \( G_A \) the absolute Galois group of the residue field of \( A \). Since \( \hat{Z} \) has cohomological dimension 1 we can apply Proposition 1.4.1.3 to obtain a map

\[
\varrho_A : H^i(K, \mu_{n\otimes j}^\mathbb{Q}) \to H^i(\hat{Z} \oplus G_A, \mu_{n\otimes j}^\mathbb{Q}) \to H^{i-1}(G_A, \mu_{n\otimes j}^{\otimes 1-1}),
\]

where the first map is restriction and the second one the residue map of Proposition 1.4.1.3. Then one has

\[
H^i_{\text{nr}}(k(X)/k, \mu_{n\otimes j}^\mathbb{Q}) = \bigcap_{A \in \text{DVR}(k(X))} (\ker(\varrho_A))
\]

(cf. [CT95] or [CT-O], §1 for the proof). This is a purely Galois cohomological description of unramified cohomology.

To connect the notion of unramified cohomology with the classical work of Artin-Mumford and Saltman, we list a few results when unramified cohomology has been computed.

- Let \( X \) be a smooth projective variety over a field \( k \), algebraically closed of characteristic 0. Then

\[
H^1_{\text{nr}}(k(X)/k, \mu_n) \simeq (\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z})^{\oplus 2q} \oplus_n \text{NS}(X)
\]

\( q = \dim H^1(X, \mathcal{O}_X) \) is the dimension of the Picard variety of \( X \) and \( n\text{NS}(X) \) is \( n \)-torsion in the Néron-Severi group of \( X \). Cf. [CT95], Prop. 4.2.1.
• Let $X$ be as in the previous example, suppose furthermore that $X$ is unirational and let $n$ be a power of a prime number $l$. Then

$$H^2_{nr}(k(X)/k, \mu_n) \simeq_n H^3(X, \mathbb{Z}_l)$$

(where $H^3(X, \mathbb{Z}_l)$ is the third étale cohomology group of $X$ with $\mathbb{Z}_l$-coefficients). Furthermore, $H^2_{nr}(k(X)/k, \mu_n) \simeq_n \text{Br}(X)$ which explains the relation to the examples of Artin-Mumford and Saltman. Cf. [CT95], Prop. 4.2.3.

Much less is known about higher unramified cohomology groups $H^i_{nr}(k(X)/k, \mu_n^{\otimes j})$, $i \geq 3$, but see [CT-O], [Sa3] and [Pey], [Mer] for some computations and uses of unramified $H^3$. Let us mention at this point a problem which seems particularly attractive and which is apparently unsolved.

**Problem 1.4.1.4.** Since for any divisor $n$ of 420 and any almost free representation $V$ of $\text{PGL}_n(\mathbb{C})$, the field $\mathbb{C}(V)^{\text{PGL}_n(\mathbb{C})}$ is stably rational (see [CT-S], Prop. 4.17 and references there), it would be very interesting to compute some higher unramified cohomology groups of $\mathbb{C}(V)^{\text{PGL}_{8}(\mathbb{C})}$, for some almost free representation $V$ of $\text{PGL}_{8}(\mathbb{C})$, or at least to detect nontrivial elements in some such group (higher should probably mean here degree at least 4). This would give examples of $\text{PGL}_8(\mathbb{C})$-quotients which are not stably rational.

We conclude by some remarks how the rationality problem changes character if we allow our ground field $k$ to be non-closed or of positive characteristic. First, Merkurjev [Mer] has shown that over nonclosed fields $k$ there exist examples of connected simply connected semi-simple groups $G$ with almost free action on a linear representation $V$ such that $k(V)^G$ is non-rational (even not stably rational). On the other hand, over $k = \overline{\mathbb{F}}_p$, the recent article [BPT-2] proves stable rationality for many quotients $V/G$ where $G$ is a finite group $G$ of Lie type, and $V$ a faithful representation of $G$ over $k = \overline{\mathbb{F}}_p$.

### 1.5 Stable rationality results for exceptional simple groups

Since the groups $G = \text{SL}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and $G = \text{Sp}_n(\mathbb{C})$ are special by Theorem 1.2.2.7, so any quotient $V/G$, where $V$ is a generically free $G$-representation, is stably rational. It is interesting to investigate if $V/G$ is always stably
rational for the other simple simply connected groups $G$ as well. For the series of Spin-groups this is not known, but for $G$ one of the exceptional groups $G_2, F_4, E_6$ or $E_7$ the answer is positive by the results of [Bogo1] (the $E_8$ case is open). We will give a proof for the stable rationality of generically free $G_2, F_4, E_6$ or $E_7$-quotients below following [Bogo1]. Good references for the material on exceptional groups we will need are [Sp-Veld], [Post], [Adams] (the latter two, however, mostly deal with the real forms). There is also the very useful series of papers by Jacobson [Jac59], [Jac60], [Jac61].

1.5.1 The case $G_2$

We start with the $G_2$ case. Recall that a composition algebra over a field $k$ is a (not necessarily associative) $k$-algebra $C$ with an identity 1 and a nondegenerate quadratic form $N$ on $C$ such that $N(xy) = N(x)N(y)$ (all $x$ and $y$ in $C$). $N$ is called the norm form, and the associated bilinear form will be denoted by $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. In any composition algebra $C$ one may introduce an involutive anti-automorphism $C \to C, x \mapsto \bar{x}$, called the conjugation, defined by $\bar{x} := -s_1(x)$ where $s_1$ is the reflection in the subspace $1^\perp$ defined by $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. Then $x\bar{x} = \bar{x}x = N(x) \cdot 1$.

Now let $\mathbb{H} := \text{Mat}_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{C})$ be the split quaternion algebra (over $\mathbb{C}$) of two by two complex matrices which is a composition algebra with norm form the determinant. If

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

then consequently

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}.$$ 

The split octonion algebra $\mathbb{O}$ is the composition algebra which is constructed from $\mathbb{H}$ by the process of doubling: as vector space $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{H} \oplus \mathbb{H}$ and the product resp. norm form are given by

$$(x, y)(u, v) := (xu + \bar{v}y, vx + y\bar{u}), \quad x, y, u, v \in \mathbb{H}$$

resp.

$$N((x, y)) := \det(x) - \det(y), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{H}.$$
1.5. THE EXCEPTIONAL SIMPLE GROUPS

We view \( \mathbb{H} \) as embedded into \( \mathbb{O} \) as the first factor, and \( 1_\mathbb{O} = (1_\mathbb{H}, 0) \). The group of automorphisms \( \text{Aut}(\mathbb{O}) \) of the composition algebra \( \mathbb{O} \) (which means unital, norm-preserving algebra automorphisms) is the simple group of type \( G_2, G_2 \subset O(N, \mathbb{O}) \). Its dimension is 14.

The proof that almost free \( G_2 \) quotients are stably rational depends on the existence of standard bases in \( \mathbb{O} \).

**Theorem 1.5.1.1.** Let \( \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) := \{ X \in \mathbb{O} | \bar{X} = -X \} \) be the subspace of purely imaginary octonions. Let \( A, B, C \in \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) \) be nonzero elements with

\[
A \perp B, \ C \perp A, B, AB.
\]

Then the elements

\[1, A, B, AB, C, AC, BC, (AB)C\]

form an orthogonal basis of \( \mathbb{O} \) and if \( A', B', C' \) are a different triple of purely imaginary octonions satisfying 1.2 with \( N(A) = N(A'), N(B) = N(B'), N(C) = N(C') \), then there exists a unique automorphism of \( \mathbb{O} \) (an element of \( G_2 \)) which carries \( A \) into \( A' \), \( B \) into \( B' \), \( C \) into \( C' \).

If we normalize \( A, B, C \) so that \( N(A) = N(B) = N(C) = 1 \), then we call them a standard basis of \( \mathbb{O} \). We postpone the proof of Theorem 1.5.1.1 to state the following:

**Corollary 1.5.1.2.** Let \( V \) be a finite dimensional generically free \( G_2 \) representation, then \( V/G_2 \) is stably rational.

**Proof.** By the no-name lemma 2.2.2.1 it suffices to find a tower of \( G_2 \)-equivariant vector bundles \( X \) (starting from a \( G_2 \)-representation as base) on which the action of \( G_2 \) is generically free and \( X/G_2 \) is stably rational. We take the 7-dimensional \( G_2 \)-representation \( \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) = \langle 1 \rangle^\perp \) and consider

\[
X = \{(A, B, C) | A \perp B, C \perp A, AB, N(A) \neq 0, N(B) \neq 0, N(C) \neq 0 \} \\
\subset \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) \oplus \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) \oplus \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}).
\]

By Theorem 1.5.1.1 \( G_2 \) acts on \( X \) freely, and \( G_2 \times (\mathbb{C}^*)^3 \) transitively. Since \( X \) is birational to a tower of \( G_2 \)-vector bundles on \( \text{Im}(\mathbb{O}) \), and \( X/G_2 \) has a transitive torus action, \( X/G_2 \) is rational.
CHAPTER 1. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM IN INVARIANT THEORY

Since Theorem 1.5.1.1 is vital for the proof of the preceding result, we outline how one may obtain it. Computations in $\mathcal{O}$ are of course awkward since it is not associative, but, as is well known, it is at least (as any composition algebra) alternative, i.e. the trilinear function (the associator)
\[
\{X, Y, Z\} := (XY)Z - X(YZ)
\]
vanishes if two of its arguments are equal, cf. [Sp-Veld], Lemma 1.4.2. We will use this fact and the collection of formulas in the following Lemma.

**Lemma 1.5.1.3.** Let $X, Y, Z$ be in $\text{Im}(\mathcal{O})$. Then:

1. $X^2 = -N(X) \cdot 1$.
2. If $X \perp Y$ then $XY = -YX \in \text{Im}(\mathcal{O})$ and $XY \perp X, Y$.
3. One has $\langle XY, Z \rangle = \langle X, YZ \rangle$.
4. If $X, Y, Z$ are pairwise orthogonal and $Z \perp XY$, then $X \perp YZ$, $Y \perp ZX$, and
\[
(XY)Z = (YZ)X = (ZX)Y \in \text{Im}(\mathcal{O})
\]

**Proof.** In view of
\[
N(X) = \bar{X}X = XX, \quad \langle X, Y \rangle = \frac{1}{2}(X\bar{Y} + Y\bar{X}) = \frac{1}{2}(\bar{X}Y + \bar{Y}X)
\]
(1) and (2) are immediate (for (2) one also uses alternativity). For (3) remark that for purely imaginary octonions $U, V$ one has $\langle UV, U \rangle = 0$ by alternativity whence
\[
0 = \langle (X + Z)Y, X + Z \rangle = \langle XY, Z \rangle + \langle ZY, X \rangle = \langle XY, Z \rangle + \langle \bar{X}, \bar{Z}Y \rangle = \langle XY, Z \rangle - \langle X, YZ \rangle.
\]
The orthogonality relations in (4) follow from (3), and the fact that $(XY)Z$, $(YZ)X$, $(ZX)Y$ are again purely imaginary follows from (2). Now since $X$ and $Y$ are orthogonal, using alternativity,
\[
0 = N(X + Y)Z - N(X)Z - N(Y)Z = (X + Y)\{X + YZ\} - X(\bar{X}Z) - Y(\bar{Y}Z) = X(\bar{Y}Z) + Y(\bar{X}Z)
\]
1.5. THE EXCEPTIONAL SIMPLE GROUPS

and conjugating the last equation, together with the fact that \( X, Y, Z \) are antiinvariant under conjugation and \( ZY = -YZ \) by (2), gives \( (ZX)Y = (YZ)X \). Then \( (YZ)X = (XY)Z \) follows from symmetry. \( \square \)

Proof. (of Theorem 1.5.1.1) Using the preceding Lemma, one verifies the orthogonality relations for the eight elements in the statement of the Theorem. By the same Lemma, one sees by direct computation that the structural constants in the multiplication table for these eight elements depend only on \( N(A), N(B), N(C) \). Hence the result. \( \square \)

1.5.2 The cases \( F_4 \) and \( E_6 \)

Let \( \mathfrak{A} \) be the set of \( 3 \times 3 \) Hermitian matrices with entries octaves

\[
\mathfrak{A} := \left\{ \xi = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & X & Y \\ \bar{X} & \lambda_2 & Z \\ \bar{Y} & \bar{Z} & \lambda_3 \end{pmatrix} \mid X, Y, Z \in \mathbb{O}, \ \lambda_i \in \mathbb{C} \right\}
\]

which under the product

\[
\xi \circ \eta := \frac{1}{2}(\xi \eta + \eta \xi)
\]

becomes a commutative, nonassociative unital \( \mathbb{C} \)-algebra in which the Jordan identity \( \xi^2(\xi \eta) = \xi(\xi^2 \eta) \) holds. \( \mathfrak{A} \) is called the exceptional Jordan algebra or Albert algebra over \( \mathbb{C} \). The group of algebra automorphisms of \( \mathfrak{A} \) is the exceptional group of type \( F_4 \). In \( \mathfrak{A} \), as for matrices over a field, every element \( \xi \) satisfies a Cayley-Hamilton cubic equation

\[
p_\xi(t) = t^3 - l(\xi)t^2 + q(\xi)t - n(\xi)
\]

where \( l \) (the trace) is a linear form, \( q \) a quadratic form, \( n \) a cubic form (the norm) on \( \mathfrak{A} \) ([Sp-Veld], Prop. 5.1.5). Here

\[
l(\xi) = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \lambda_3,
q(\xi) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 + \lambda_1 \lambda_3 + \lambda_2 \lambda_3 - X\bar{X} - Y\bar{Y} - Z\bar{Z},
n(\xi) = \det(\xi) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3 - \lambda_1 Z\bar{Z} - \lambda_2 Y\bar{Y} - \lambda_3 X\bar{X} + (XZ)\bar{Y} + (ZX)\bar{Y} + Y(\bar{Z}\bar{X}).
\]

\( l, q \) and \( n \) are invariant under \( F_4 \). The vector space automorphisms of \( \mathfrak{A} \) which leave \( n \) invariant constitute the exceptional group \( E_6 \) (the simply connected form). As an easy reduction we have:
Theorem 1.5.2.1. If generically free linear $F_4$-quotients are stably rational, the same holds for generically free linear $E_6$-quotients.

Proof. By [Sp-Veld], Prop. 5.9.3, the group $E_6$ acts transitively on the set of lines in $\mathfrak{A}$ which are generated by vectors $\xi$ with $n(\xi) \neq 0$. The stabilizer of a generic such $\xi$ is the group $F_4$ by [Sp-Veld], Prop. 5.9.4. The center of $E_6$ is clearly $\mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$ and hence, if an element in $E_6$ carries $\mathbb{C}\xi$ into itself, it must be in $F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$ (the product is clearly direct since $F_4$ has trivial center). In other words, $\mathbb{C}\xi$ is a $(E_6, F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z})$-section in the sense of Definition 2.2.1.1. Thus, if $V$ is a generically free $E_6$-representation, then $V/E_6$ is stably equivalent to $(V \oplus \mathfrak{A})/E_6$ by Lemma 2.2.2.1, and $(V \oplus \mathfrak{A})$ has a $(E_6, F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z})$-section by the foregoing. Thus generically free $E_6$- and generically free $F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$-quotients are stably equivalent. Certainly, if $W$ is a generically free $F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$-representation, $W/(F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z})$ is, again by Lemma 2.2.2.1 stably equivalent to $(W \oplus \mathbb{C})/(F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z})$, where the action of $F_4 \times \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$ on $\mathbb{C}$ is via a cube root of unity (and $F_4$ acts trivially). First dividing out the $\mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$-action we see by Lemma 2.2.2.1 that this is $(W \oplus (\mathbb{C}/\mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}))/F_4 \simeq (W/F_4) \oplus \mathbb{C}$. Thus indeed generically free $E_6$- and $F_4$-quotients are stably equivalent. \hfill $\square$

The proof of the stably rationality for generically free $F_4$-quotients consists of a reduction to $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$ (more precisely the normalizer $N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))$ in $F_4$).

In fact, from [Jac60] Theorem 8, one knows that the subgroup of $F_4$ leaving all the diagonal matrices in $\mathfrak{A}$ elementwise invariant is $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$ and the group leaving the subspace of diagonal matrices invariant is a semi-direct product of $\text{Spin}_4(\mathbb{C})$ and the symmetric group $\mathfrak{S}_3$, the full group of outer automorphisms of $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$, permuting the diagonal entries. Thus it follows (since $\dim F_4 = 52$, $\dim \mathfrak{A} = 27$, $\dim \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) = 28$) that the generic $F_4$-orbit in $\mathfrak{A}$ intersects the subspace of diagonal elements (reduction to normal form), and that $\text{Spin}_4(\mathbb{C})$ is the stabilizer in general position of an element in $\mathfrak{A}$. Thus the subspace of $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$-invariants in $\mathfrak{A}$ is an $(F_4, N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})))$-section, and generically free $F_4$-quotients and $N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))$-quotients are stably equivalent.

Let now $\text{SO}(N)$ be the special orthogonal group of the norm form $N$ of the split octonion algebra $\mathfrak{O}$. Let the group $\text{SO}(N)^3$ act in $\mathfrak{O}^3$ componentwise. Inside $\text{SO}(N)^3$ one has the subgroup of related triples
{(r₁, r₂, r₃) | r₁(XY) = r₂(X)r₃(Y) ∀X, Y ∈ \mathbb{O}}.

By [Sp-Veld], Proposition 3.6.3, this group is isomorphic to \(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) = \text{Spin}(N)\), and the three 8-dimensional representations of \(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})\) induced by \((r₁, r₂, r₃) \mapsto r_i, i = 1, 2, 3,\) are irreducible and pairwise nonisomorphic ([Sp-Veld], Proposition 3.6.6), the standard representation of \(\text{SO}(N)\) and the two half-spin representations of \(\text{Spin}(N)\). This phenomenon is referred to as the principle of triality.

By [Sp-Veld], Proposition 3.6.4, the semidirect product \(N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) = \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \rtimes_{\varphi} \mathfrak{S}_3\) can be described as follows: recall for reference that for groups \(N, H\) and \(\varphi : H \to \text{Aut}(N)\), the semidirect product \(N \rtimes_{\varphi} H\) is the set-theoretic product with multiplication

\[(n_1, h_1) \cdot (n_2, h_2) = (n_1\varphi_{h_1}(n_2), h_1h_2).\]

For \(r \in \text{SO}(N)\) define \(\hat{r}\) by \(\hat{r}(X) := r(X)\) (conjugation in \(\mathbb{O}\)). If \((r₁, r₂, r₃)\) is a related triple, so are the images

\[
\begin{align*}
\tau_1 : (r₁, r₂, r₃) &\mapsto (\hat{r}_1, \hat{r}_₂, \hat{r}_3), \\
\tau_2 : (r₁, r₂, r₃) &\mapsto (r₃, \hat{r}_₂, r₁), \\
\tau_3 : (r₁, r₂, r₃) &\mapsto (r₂, r₁, \hat{r}_₃)
\end{align*}
\]

and the maps \(\tau_1, \tau_2, \tau_3\) generate a subgroup of the automorphisms of the group \(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})\) of related triples which is isomorphic to \(\mathfrak{S}_3\). It gives us the homomorphism \(\varphi : \mathfrak{S}_3 \to \text{Aut}(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))\) and hence the group \(N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))\) in terms of the related triples picture we use. It follows that \(N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))\) acts in \(\mathbb{O}^3\) where we must define

\[
\begin{align*}
\tau_1(X₁, X₂, X₃) &= (\bar{X}_₁, \bar{X}_₂, \bar{X}_₃), \\
\tau_2(X₁, X₂, X₃) &= (X₃, \bar{X}_₂, X₁), \\
\tau_3(X₁, X₂, X₃) &= (X₂, X₁, \bar{X}_₃)
\end{align*}
\]

to get a well-defined action of the semidirect product. Then

**Proposition 1.5.2.2.** The quotient \(\mathbb{O}^3/N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}))\) is rational.
CHAPTER 1. THE RATIONALITY PROBLEM IN INVARIANT THEORY

Proof. First remark that for \((X, Y, Z) \in \mathbb{O}^3\) the functions \(\langle X, X \rangle = N(X), N(Y), N(Z)\) and \(\langle X, Y Z \rangle\) are invariant under the group of related triples \(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})\): for the last of these this follows from

\[
\langle r_1(X), r_2(Y) r_3(Z) \rangle = \langle r_1(X), Y Z \rangle = \langle X, Y Z \rangle.
\]

For \(X, Y, Z \in \mathbb{O}\) the equations

\[
\langle XY, Z \rangle = \langle Y, Z X \rangle, \quad \langle XY, Z \rangle = \langle X, Z Y \rangle
\]

hold, see [Sp-Veld], Lemma 1.3.2. It follows that the function \(\langle X, Y Z \rangle\) is also invariant under the action of \(\mathfrak{S}_3\) on \(\mathbb{O}^3\) described above: indeed

\[
\langle \tau_2(X), \tau_2(Y) \tau_2(Z) \rangle = \langle Z, Y X \rangle = \langle X, Y Z \rangle, \\
\langle \tau_3(X), \tau_3(Y) \tau_3(Z) \rangle = \langle Y, X Z \rangle = \langle X, Y Z \rangle.
\]

The claim is that the map

\[
f : \mathbb{O}^3 / N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \to (\mathbb{C}^3) / \mathfrak{S}_3 \times \mathbb{C}\\[(X, Y, Z)] \mapsto (\{N(X), N(Y), N(Z)\}, \langle X, Y Z \rangle)
\]

is birational.

It is clear that \(f\) is dominant: one can choose \(Y = Y_0\) and \(Z = Z_0\) of any prescribed nonzero norms, and then we have to find \(X\) in the affine subspace \(\langle X, Y_0 Z_0 \rangle = c_0 \neq 0\) with given norm \(N(X) \neq 0\). But certainly we can find some \(X_0\) with \(\langle X_0, Y_0 Z_0 \rangle = c_0\) (e.g. \(X_0 = c_0 N(X_0)^{-1} N(Y_0)^{-1} Y_0 Z_0\)) and then some \(X\) in the 7-dimensional (certainly not totally isotropic) complement \(\langle Y_0 Z_0 \rangle^\perp\) with \(N(X) \neq 0\) due to the nondegeneracy of the norm. One can then choose \(X = X_0 + \lambda X\), some suitable \(\lambda \in \mathbb{C}\).

To show that \(f\) is generically one-to-one we prove: if \((X, Y, Z)\) and \((X', Y', Z')\) are elements in \(\mathbb{O}^3\) of nonzero norms with \(N(X) = N(X'), N(Y) = N(Y'), N(Z) = N(Z')\) and \(\langle X, Y Z \rangle = \langle X', Y' Z' \rangle\), then the two triples are in the same \(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})\)-orbit. It suffices to show that for each \((X, Y, Z)\) with nonzero norms one can find a related triple of rotations \((r_1, r_2, r_3)\) carrying this into \((\lambda \cdot 1, \mu \cdot 1, Z')\) where \(\lambda\) is a square root of \(N(X), \mu\) a square root of \(N(Y), N(Z) = N(Z')\), and \(\langle Y X, Z \rangle = \langle \lambda \mu \cdot 1, Z' \rangle\). It is clear that we can find \(r_1\) carrying \(X\) into \(\lambda \cdot 1\), and the (somewhat surprising) fact that one can find a related triple \((r_1, r_2, r_3)\) with \(r_1(X) = \lambda \cdot 1, r_2(Y) = \mu \cdot 1\) is then exactly [Sp-Veld], Lemma 3.4.2. Put \(Z'' = r_3(Z)\). The subgroup of
the group of related triples satisfying \( r_1(1) = r_2(1) = 1 \) is the group \( G_2 \):
for \( r_1(1 \cdot y) = r_2(1)r_3(y) \) implies \( r_1 = r_3 \) and \( r_1(1 \cdot 1) = r_2(1)r_3(1) \) implies \( r_3(1) = 1 \) whence by \( r_1(x \cdot 1) = r_2(x)r_3(1) \) one gets
\[
r_1 = r_2 = r_3.
\]
Thus we only have to show that given \( Z'' \in \mathcal{O} \) and \( Z' \in \mathcal{O} \) of equal nonzero norms and with
\[
\langle \lambda \mu \cdot 1, Z' \rangle = \langle \lambda \mu \cdot 1, Z'' \rangle
\]
one can send \( Z'' \) into \( Z' \) by an element of \( G_2 \). But the previous relation means that \( Z' \) and \( Z'' \) have equal real parts, and the fact that \( N(Z') = N(Z'') \) then
gives that the imaginary parts of \( Z' \) and \( Z'' \) have equal norm. Thus the result
follows from Theorem 1.5.1.1. 
\[\square\]

**Lemma 1.5.2.3.** The stabilizer in general position in \( N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) of the
representation \( \mathcal{O}^3 \) is isomorphic to \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) and as \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \)-representation \( \mathcal{O}^3 \)
decomposes as
\[
(\mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C}^3 \oplus (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)^{\oplus 3}.
\]

**Proof.** Note that the definition of the action of \( N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) on \( \mathcal{O}^3 \) shows that the
stabilizer of a point in general position in this group coincides with the
stabilizer in general position in \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \) (one cannot apply any permutation
if the norms of \( X, Y, Z \) are pairwise distinct). Then the proof of Proposition
1.5.2.2 shows that the sought-for stabilizer in general position is equal to the
stabilizer in general position of \( G_2 \) in \( \mathcal{O} \). The determination of it, as well as
the associated branching rule for \( \mathcal{O} \), becomes most transparent if we use a
model for \( \mathcal{O} \) in terms of vector matrices (see [Sp-Veld], section 1.8): \( \mathcal{O} \) can
be realized as the algebra of vector matrices
\[
X = \begin{pmatrix} a & v \\ w & b \end{pmatrix}, \quad a, b \in \mathbb{C}, \ v, w \in \mathbb{C}^3
\]
with multiplication
\[
\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & v_1 \\ w_1 & b_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_2 & v_2 \\ w_2 & b_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1a_2 + \langle v_1, w_2 \rangle & b_2v_1 + a_1v_2 - w_1 \times w_2 \\ a_2w_1 + b_1w_2 + v_1 \times v_2 & b_1b_2 + \langle w_1, v_2 \rangle \end{pmatrix}
\]
with conjugation and norm given by
\[ \bar{X} = \begin{pmatrix} b & -v \\ -w & a \end{pmatrix}, \quad N(X) = ab - \langle v, w \rangle. \]

Here \( \langle , \rangle \) denotes the standard scalar product on \( \mathbb{C}^3 \), and the vector product is defined by \( \langle v \times v_2, v_3 \rangle = \det(v_1, v_2, v_3) \). An element of \( G_2 \) which preserves the diagonal matrices must leave the two copies of \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) stable: suppose for example that \( g \) maps
\[ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ v^* & 0 \end{pmatrix} \]
to
\[ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & w \\ w^* & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad w \neq 0, \]
then the compatibility with the product would force
\[
g \left( \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ v^* & 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \right) = g \left( \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ av^* & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & aw \\ aw^* & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\]
which is impossible. Thus if an element in \( G_2 \) preserves the subspace of diagonal matrices it must be of the form
\[ \begin{pmatrix} a & v \\ v^* & b \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} a & l(v) \\ m(v^*) & b \end{pmatrix} \]
l : \( \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^3 \) and \( m : \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^3 \) some invertible linear transformations which must satisfy \( \langle l(v), m(v^*) \rangle = \langle v, v^* \rangle \) for all \( v \in \mathbb{C}^3 \), \( v^* \in \mathbb{C}^3 \). It follows that \( m = (l^t)^{-1} \). On the other hand we also want \( l \) to be compatible with the product in \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) which means in particular
\[ l(v_1) \times l(v_2) = (l^t)^{-1}(v_1 \times v_2) \]
whence \( \det(l(v_1), l(v_2), l(v_3)) = \det(v_1, v_2, v_3) \) and \( l \in \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \). This proves the lemma. \( \square \)
The subspace
\[ \Delta := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \right\} \oplus \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \right\} \oplus \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} e & 0 \\ 0 & f \end{pmatrix} \right\} \]

consisting of three copies of diagonal matrices in \( \mathbb{O}^3 \) (we use the description of \( \mathbb{O} \) in terms of vector matrices from the proof of Lemma 1.5.2.3) is thus a \( (N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})), N(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}))) \)-section for the action of \( N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \)-action on \( \mathbb{O}^3 \) whence

**Corollary 1.5.2.4.** Linear generically free \( F_4 \)-quotients and linear generically free \( N(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})) \)-quotients are stably equivalent.

We have to determine \( N(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})) \) explicitly:

**Lemma 1.5.2.5.** The normalizer of the group \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) inside \( N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) = \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \rtimes \mathbb{S}_3 \) (equivalently the stabilizer of the subspace \( \Delta \)) is generated by the following three subgroups:

1. **The subgroup \( \mathbb{S}_3 \) in \( N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) acting on \( \mathbb{O}^3 \) through generators**

   \[ \tau_2(X_1, X_2, X_3) = (X_3, \bar{X}_2, X_1), \]
   \[ \tau_3(X_1, X_2, X_3) = (X_2, X_1, \bar{X}_3). \]

2. **The subgroup isomorphic to \( \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \) of the group \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \subset N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) of associated triples with generator \( i \)**

   \[ i \left( \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & v_1 \\ w_1 & b_1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a_2 & v_2 \\ w_2 & b_2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a_3 & v_3 \\ w_3 & b_3 \end{pmatrix} \right) := \left( \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & w_1 \\ v_1 & a_1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} b_2 & w_2 \\ v_2 & a_2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} b_3 & w_3 \\ v_3 & a_3 \end{pmatrix} \right). \]

3. **A subgroup \( \mathbb{C}^* \) of the group \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \subset N(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) of associated triples which identifies \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C}^* \) with the triple**

   \( (r_1, r_2, r_3) := (L_{X(\lambda)}, L_{X(\lambda)}R_{X(\lambda)}, L_{X(\lambda)^{-1}}) \)

where \( X(\lambda) \) denotes the octonion \( \text{diag}(\lambda, \lambda^{-1}) \) and \( L \) and \( R \) denote left resp. right multiplication with the respective subscript in \( \mathbb{O} \).
(4) A subgroup \( C^* \) of the \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \subset \text{N}(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) of associated triples which identifies \( \mu \in \mathbb{C}^* \) with the triple
\[
(r_1, r_2, r_3) := (R_{X(\mu)}, R_{X(\mu)^{-1}}, L_{X(\mu)}R_{X(\mu)})
\]

(5) The group \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) itself.

Proof. It is not hard to check that all the subroups given stabilize \( \Delta \) and that (2), (3), (4) and (5) really define elements of \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \), i.e. they are associated triples of rotations \((r_1, r_2, r_3)\) with
\[
r_1(XY) = r_2(X)r_3(Y), \quad X, Y \in \mathbb{O}.
\]
Let now an element in \( \text{N}(\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})) \) be given which stabilizes \( \Delta \). After pre-composing with an element in \( \mathbb{S}_3 \) we may assume this element is given by an associated triple \((r_1, r_2, r_3)\) of rotations.
The element \( r_1 \) stabilizes the subspace of diagonal matrices \( \text{diag}(a, b) \in \mathbb{O} \) and its orthogonal complement, and it preserves the restriction of the norm to that subspace \( \text{diag}(a, b) \mapsto ab \). Thus the restriction of \( r_1 \) to the diagonal subspace in \( \mathbb{O} \) is a composition of
\[
\begin{pmatrix}
\lambda & 0 \\
0 & \lambda^{-1}
\end{pmatrix}, \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{C}^*
\]
and the involution
\[
\begin{pmatrix}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{pmatrix}.
\]
Precomposing with elements in (2) and (3) we may thus suppose that \((r_1, r_2, r_3)\) is an associated triple of rotations with \( r_1 \) leaving the diagonal matrices \( \text{diag}(a, b) \) in \( \mathbb{O} \) pointwise fixed. We claim that the restriction of \( r_2 \) to diagonal matrices then preserves orientation. Indeed if
\[
r_2 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mu \end{pmatrix}
\]
then the compatibility requirement for associated triples
\[
\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} = r_1 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mu \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a' & 0 \\ 0 & b' \end{pmatrix}
\]
1.5. THE EXCEPTIONAL SIMPLE GROUPS

(\(G\)) gives a contradiction, and analogously for \(r_3\). Hence we must have
\[
\begin{align*}
    r_2 \left( \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \right) &= \begin{pmatrix} \mu a & 0 \\ 0 & \mu^{-1}b \end{pmatrix}, \\
    r_3 \left( \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \right) &= \begin{pmatrix} \mu^{-1}c & 0 \\ 0 & \mu d \end{pmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]
and acting with suitable elements in (3) and (4) (corresponding to \(\lambda = \nu^{-1}\) a cube root of \(\mu\)) we may assume \(r_1(1) = r_2(1) = r_3(1) = 1\), whence we have an element in \(G_2\), and since it stabilizes diagonal matrices pointwise, indeed in \(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\) which is the group in (5).

Let \(N := N(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}))\). We determine the abstract structure of this group.

**Lemma 1.5.2.6.** The group \(N\) is a semidirect product
\[(\mathfrak{S}_3 \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \ltimes (\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*)\).

The elements of \(\mathfrak{S}_3\) and \(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\) commute, and the homomorphism \(\mathfrak{S}_3 \to \text{Aut}(\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*)\) is given in terms of the generators \(\tau_2\) and \(\tau_3\) by
\[
\begin{align*}
    \tau_2 &: (\lambda, \mu) \mapsto (\lambda^{-1}\mu, \mu), \\
    \tau_3 &: (\lambda, \mu) \mapsto (\lambda, \lambda\mu^{-1}).
\end{align*}
\]

The homomorphism \(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \to \text{Aut}(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*)\) is given by
\[
\iota : (g, (\lambda, \mu)) \mapsto ((g)^{-1}, (\lambda^{-1}, \mu^{-1})).
\]

**Proof.** A computation using the previous Lemma, and the definition of the action of \(\mathfrak{S}_3\) on associated triples.

The group \(N\) acts naturally on the space \(\Delta \simeq \mathbb{C}^6\) consisting of three copies of diagonal matrices in \(\mathfrak{S}_3^\text{\#}\), and according to Proposition 1.5.2.2, \(\Delta/N \simeq \mathbb{C}^3/N(\text{Spin}_6(\mathbb{C}))\) is rational.

We may consider \(R = \mathbb{C}^3 \oplus (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\) as an \(N\)-representation, by letting \(\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*\) and \(\mathfrak{S}_3\) act trivially, and \((\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \ltimes \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\) in the natural way. The stabilizer in general position for the action of \(N\) in \(\Delta \oplus R\) is \(\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})\) (since a general point in \(\Delta\) is stabilized by \(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\), it coincides with the stabilizer in general position of the \(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\)-representation \(R\)).

\(R\) decomposes as \(\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})\)-representation as \(\mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C}^2 \oplus \mathbb{C}^2\). The subspace \(\mathbb{C}^2 \oplus \mathbb{C}^2\) is invariant under the normalizer of \(\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})\) in \(N\), whence we may construct (birationally) an \(N\)-vector bundle \(\mathcal{E}\) over \(\Delta \oplus R\) in the following way: it is a subbundle of the bundle \(\Delta \oplus R \oplus R\) over \(\Delta \oplus R\), whose fibre
over a point \( x \in \Delta \oplus R \) with stabilizer \( N_x \simeq \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \) is the subspace \( \mathcal{E}_x \subset R \) which is isomorphic to \( \mathbb{C}^2 \oplus \mathbb{C}^2 \) as \( N_x \)-representation.

Thus we have a tower of \( N \)-equivariant bundles \( \mathcal{E} \to \Delta \oplus R \to \Delta \), with a generically free action of \( N \), and there is a torus action of \( \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^* \) on the fibres of the two bundles in this tower via homotheties. The action of \( \text{SL}_2 \times \mathbb{C}^* \) resp. \( \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^* \) is generically transitive on the fibres, so that

\[
(\mathcal{E}/N)/(\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*) \simeq \Delta/N
\]

is rational, whence also \( \mathcal{E}/N \) is since it is a torus bundle over a rational space and thus Zariski locally trivial.

### 1.5.3 The case \( E_7 \)

Consider the 56-dimensional \( \mathbb{C} \)-vector space

\[
\mathfrak{z} = \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathfrak{a}_1 \oplus \mathfrak{a}_2
\]

where \( \mathfrak{a}_1 \simeq \mathfrak{a}_2 \simeq \mathfrak{a} \) is the 27-dimensional Albert algebra introduced in the previous subsection (\( \mathfrak{z} \) is sometimes called the space of \( 2 \times 2 \)-Zorn matrices and can be given the structure of an algebra, a so-called Freudenthal algebra; we will not need it). As we saw above, \( \mathfrak{a} \) carries a cubic form \( \xi \mapsto n(\xi) \) (the norm form) and a linear form \( \xi \mapsto l(\xi) \) (the usual trace). We have a nondegenerate symmetric bilinear form on \( \mathfrak{a} \) given by \( (\xi, \eta) = l(\xi \eta) \) and by polarization from \( n \) we obtain a symmetric trilinear form \( n(\xi, \eta, \zeta) \) on \( \mathfrak{z} \) with \( n(\xi) = n(\xi, \xi, \xi) \). We may then define a vector product on \( \mathfrak{a} \) by

\[
(\xi \times \eta, \zeta) := 3n(\xi, \eta, \zeta).
\]

Let us define, following [Brown], a nondegenerate skew-symmetric bilinear form \( \{\cdot, \cdot\} \) and a quartic form \( Q \) on \( \mathfrak{z} \). Let

\[
\Xi = (a, b, \xi_1, \xi_2), \quad H = (c, d, \eta_1, \eta_2)
\]

be two elements of \( \mathfrak{z} \) and set

\[
\{\Xi, H\} = ad - bc + (\xi_1, \eta_2) - (\eta_1, \xi_2),
\]

\[
Q(\Xi) = 8(\xi_2 \times \xi_2, \xi_1 \times \xi_1) - 8an(\xi_1) - 8bn(\xi_2) - 2[(\xi_1, \xi_2) - ab]^2.
\]

Then the simply connected simple group of type \( E_7 \) is the group of linear automorphisms of \( \mathfrak{z} \) preserving \( \{\cdot, \cdot\} \) and \( Q \) (see [Brown]).
1.5. THE EXCEPTIONAL SIMPLE GROUPS

Lemma 1.5.3.1. A generic line $\mathbb{C}\Xi$ in $\mathfrak{z}$ is a $E_6 \times \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z}$-section of the action of $E_7$ on $\mathfrak{z}$. Here $\mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z}$ has a generator $\varepsilon$ such that $\varepsilon^2$ generates the center $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ of $E_7$.

Proof. By [Brown], §6, Theorem 3, $E_7$ acts transitively on the vectors $\Xi$ in $\mathfrak{z}$ with constant nonzero $Q(\Xi)$. The stabilizer in general position of $E_7$ in $\mathfrak{z}$ is $E_6$: indeed, it suffices to calculate the stabilizer of

$$f = (1, 1, 0, 0).$$

By polarization, the quartic form $Q$ determines a symmetric four-linear form $Q(\cdot, \cdot, \cdot, \cdot)$, and for given $\Xi, H, Z$ in $\mathfrak{z}$ there is a unique element $T(\Xi, H, Z) \in \mathfrak{z}$ with

$$\{T(\Xi, H, Z), \Theta\} = Q(\Xi, H, Z, \Theta), \quad \forall \Theta \in \mathfrak{z}.$$

Then clearly every element stabilizing $f$ also stabilizes $T(f, f, f)$ and by [Brown], §4, Theorem 1, $\mathfrak{z}$ decomposes as

$$\mathfrak{z} = \mathbb{C} \cdot f \oplus \mathbb{C}T(f, f, f) \oplus \mathfrak{a} \oplus \mathfrak{a}$$

and also putting $f_1 = (1/2)(f - T(f, f, f)), f_2 = (1/2)(f + T(f, f, f))$

$$\mathfrak{z} = \mathbb{C} \cdot f_1 \oplus \mathbb{C}f_2 \oplus \mathfrak{a} \oplus \mathfrak{a}$$

and the skew-symmetric bilinear form and quartic form are given by the formulas above with respect to this decomposition. Thus if $g \in E_7$ stabilizes $f$, it stabilizes the whole subspace $\mathbb{C}^2 = \{(a, b, 0, 0) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{C} \} \subset \mathfrak{z}$ pointwise. By [Brown], §5, Lemma 12, it follows that $g$ is in $E_6$ acting as

$$g \cdot (a, b, \xi_1, \xi_2) = (a, b, g\xi_1, (g^*)^{-1}\xi_2)$$

whence also the decomposition

$$\mathfrak{z} = \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathfrak{a} \oplus \mathfrak{a}^\vee$$

as an $E_6$-module. Suppose now $g \in E_7$ maps a point $p$ on the line $\mathbb{C}f$ to another point on that line. Since $g$ preserves $Q$ it can only multiply $p$ by a fourth root of unity. But the element

$$\varepsilon : (a, b, \xi_1, \xi_2) \mapsto (ib, ia, (3^{1/3}i)^{-1}\xi_2, -3^{1/3}i\xi_1)$$

is in $E_7$ and is multiplication by $i$ on $f$. Hence the result, since $\varepsilon^2 = -1$ generates the center. 

$\square$
Lemma 1.5.3.2. Generically free linear quotients for $E_6 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z}$ are stably equivalent to generically free linear $\text{Out}(E_6) = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \rtimes E_6$ quotients.

Proof. The central extensions

$$1 \to \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \simeq (e^2) \to \text{Stab}_{E_6}(C\Xi) \simeq \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \times E_6 \to \text{Out}(E_6) \to 1$$

and

$$1 \to \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \times \text{Out}(E_6) \to \text{Out}(E_6) \to 1$$

give the same class in $H^2(\text{Out}(E_6), C^*)$, i.e. the corresponding $C^*$-extensions are isomorphic. Since generically free linear $\text{Out}(E_6)$ and $\text{Out}(E_6) \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$-quotients are stably equivalent, it suffices to indicate a generically free $G_1 = \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} \rtimes E_6$ representation $V_1$, a generically free $G_2 = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \times \text{Out}(E_6)$ representation $V_2$, and a $G = C^* \rtimes \text{Out}(E_6)$ representation $V$ (the group $G$ being the common $C^*$-extension induced by $G_1$ and $G_2$) such that $V_1/G_1$ and $V_2/G_2$ are both generically $C^*$-bundles over $V/G$.

In fact we may start with some generically free $E_6$-representation $W$, and take the $\text{Out}(E_6)$-representation $W \oplus W^\vee$ as space for $V_1$, $V_2$ and $V$. If $E_6$ acts in $W$ via a matrix $M$, then $\text{Out}(E_6) = E_6 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ acts in $W \oplus W^\vee$ via

$$(M, \eta) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & (M^t)^{-1} \\ M & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

($\eta$ a generator of $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$), and $E_6 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z}$ acts via

$$(M, \xi) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & i(M^t)^{-1} \\ iM & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

($\mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} = \langle \xi \rangle$), whereas $\text{Out}(E_6) \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ acts via

$$(M, \eta, \epsilon) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -(M^t)^{-1} \\ -M & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

($\epsilon$ a generator of $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$). Finally $\text{Out}(E_6) \rtimes \mathbb{C}^*$ acts via

$$(M, \eta, \lambda) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \lambda(M^t)^{-1} \\ \lambda M & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$ 

These actions have the properties required which concludes the proof. \qed
1.5. THE EXCEPTIONAL SIMPLE GROUPS

We reduce the group $\text{Out}(E_6)$ further via the following Lemma.

**Lemma 1.5.3.3.** Consider the $\text{Out}(E_6)$ representation $\mathfrak{A} \oplus \mathfrak{A}^\vee$. Then:

1. The stabilizer of a generic point $(x, y^*) \in \mathfrak{A} \oplus \mathfrak{A}^\vee$ is $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$. The $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$-invariants in $\mathfrak{A} \oplus \mathfrak{A}^\vee$ consist of the six-dimensional space of pairs of diagonal matrices in $\mathfrak{A}$.

2. The normalizer $N_1$ of $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$ in $\text{Out}(E_6)$ is the group

$$N_1 = (C_1 \times G_3) \ltimes ((\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \times T_1)/((\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}))$$

where $C_1 \simeq \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ and $T_1 \simeq (\mathbb{C}^*)^2$. Here

- $C_1$ acts on $T_1$ by mapping $(\lambda, \mu)$ to $(\lambda^{-1}, \mu^{-1})$, and the action of $C_1$ commutes with that of $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$.

- $G_3$ acts on $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$ as the group of outer automorphisms, and it acts on $T_1$ as in Lemma 1.5.2.6, i.e.

$$\tau_2 : (\lambda, \mu) \mapsto (\lambda^{-1}, \mu),$$

$$\tau_3 : (\lambda, \mu) \mapsto (\lambda, \lambda\mu^{-1}).$$

The group $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ is embedded diagonally in $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \times T_1$: into $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$ as the center, into $T_1$ as the subgroup consisting of pairs $(\pm 1, \pm 1)$.

**Proof.** (1) : Note that the element $\epsilon$ maps $(\xi_1, \xi_2) \in \mathfrak{A} \oplus \mathfrak{A}$ (the second summand with the dual action of $E_6$) into $((\sqrt{7})^{-1}\xi_2, -\sqrt{7}\xi_1)$, so if the norms $u(\xi_1)$ and $u(\xi_2)$ are general, since $E_6$ acts by norm preserving maps, we see that the stabilizer of a point $(x, y^*)$ in general position in $\text{Out}(E_6)$ coincides with the stabilizer in $E_6$.

As we have seen above ([Sp-Veld], Proposition 5.9.4), the stabilizer of a general $x \in \mathfrak{A}$ in $E_6$ is $F_4$. But for $F_4$ we have a nondegenerate symmetric bilinear invariant form on $\mathfrak{A}$, namely the trace form $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$, and $\mathfrak{A}$ and $\mathfrak{A}^\vee$ are canonically identified as $F_4$ representations. Therefore the stabilizer in general position in question is the stabilizer in general position in $F_4$ of a point $y \in \mathfrak{A}$, and we know from the previous subsection that it is $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$.

We also know the decomposition of $\mathfrak{A}^2$ with respect to $\text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C})$, namely it is

$$((\mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{S}^+ \oplus \mathbb{S}^-) \oplus \mathfrak{S})^2,$$
\( \Sigma^\pm \) the two half spin representations, \( S \) the standard representation of \( \text{SO}_8(\mathbb{C}) \). Thus the subspace \( \mathbb{C}^6 \) of pairs of diagonal matrices in \( \mathfrak{a}^2 \) are the \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \)-invariants.

(2): The group \( N_1 \) in \( \text{Out}(E_6) \) consists of the transformations carrying the previous \( \mathbb{C}^6 \) into itself. Note that there is a two-torus \( T_1 \) in \( E_6 \) preserving that subspace: indeed, the restriction of the norm form \( n \) to the diagonal matrices in \( \mathfrak{a} \) is \( \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3 \) for

\[
\eta(\xi) = \det(\xi) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3 - \lambda_1 Z \bar{Z} - \lambda_2 Y \bar{Y} - \lambda_3 X \bar{X} + (X Z) \bar{Y} + Y (\bar{Z} \bar{X}),
\]

so the transformations (for \( (\lambda, \mu) \in (\mathbb{C}^*)^2 \))

\[
\lambda_1 \mapsto \lambda^2 \lambda_1, \quad \lambda_2 \mapsto \lambda^{-2} \mu^2 \lambda_2, \quad \lambda_3 \mapsto \mu^{-2} \lambda_3,
\]

\[
Z \mapsto \lambda^{-1} Z, \quad Y \mapsto \lambda \mu^{-1} Y, \quad X \mapsto \mu X
\]

are in \( E_6 \), and they map pairs of diagonal matrices in \( \mathfrak{a} \oplus \mathfrak{a}^\vee \) into themselves. By [Jac60] (see the discussion after Theorem 7), the group \( \mathfrak{s}_3 \) of outer automorphisms of \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \) is realized inside \( F_4 \) (and thus in \( E_6 \)) as follows: a permutation \( \sigma \) of \( \{1, 2, 3\} \) acts on

\[
\xi = \begin{pmatrix}
\lambda_1 & X_{12} & X_{13} \\
\bar{X}_{12} & \lambda_2 & X_{23} \\
\bar{X}_{13} & \bar{X}_{23} & \lambda_3
\end{pmatrix}
\]

in \( F_4 \) by changing \( \lambda_i \) to \( \lambda_{\sigma(i)} \) and \( X_{ij} \) to \( X_{\sigma(i)\sigma(j)} \) (note that \( X_{ij} = \bar{X}_{ji} \)). Note that the generators \( \tau_2 \) and \( \tau_3 \) above then may be viewed to correspond to the transpositions exchanging 1 and 2, and 2 and 3, respectively. Thus if \( g \in N_1 \), we may, after precomposing with the element \( \epsilon \) effecting the outer automorphism of \( E_6 \), assume that \( g \in E_6 \). The restriction of \( g \) to the diagonal \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) in \( \mathfrak{a} \) preserves the form \( \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3 \), hence, as it is linear, it is a composite of restrictions of an element in \( \mathfrak{s}_3 \) and \( T_1 \). Thus we see that the groups given above generate \( N_1 \). The remaining statements on the structure of \( N_1 \) and the actions in the semidirect product are now verified by direct computation. Note that the intersection of \( T_1 \) and \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \) inside \( E_6 \) consists exactly of the center of \( \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}) \).

\[ \square \]

**Maybe the rest has to be modified after this?**

By taking another section, we reduce the group \( N_1 \) further.
Lemma 1.5.3.4. The question of stable rationality for linear generically free $E_7$ quotients is reduced to the same question for the group

$$N_2 = (C_1 \times C_2 \times G_3) \ltimes (\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times T_1 \times T_2)$$

where $C_2 \simeq \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ and $T_2 \simeq (\mathbb{C}^*)^2$. Here the actions are as follows:

- The actions of $C_1$ and $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ and $T_2$ commute, and $C_1$ acts on $T_1$ as in Lemma 1.5.3.3.
- $C_2$ acts on $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ via an exterior automorphism and on $T_2$ in the same way as $C_1$ acts on $T_1$. The actions of $C_2$ and $T_1$ commute.
- $G_3$ acts on $T_1$ and on $T_2$ as in Lemma 1.5.2.6. The $G_3$-action commutes with the $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-action.

Proof. The subgroup $C_1 \ltimes T_1$ is normal in $N_1$, and thus we may view the triality $\mathbb{O}^3$ as in the previous subsection as a natural representation of the group $N_1$ induced from the quotient

$$N_1/(C_1 \ltimes T_1) \simeq G_3 \ltimes \text{Spin}_8(\mathbb{C}).$$

But then the subspace $\Delta$ from the previous subsection gives a section for this action, and by Lemma 1.5.2.6 we obtain the result.

We may eliminate the $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-part from $N_2$ in the following way.

Lemma 1.5.3.5. The question of stable rationality for linear generically free $E_7$ quotients is reduced to the same question for the group

$$H = G_3 \ltimes (\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2)^2.$$

The actions of $G_3$ and $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ commute, and they both act on the two-dimensional torus as in the previous Lemma 1.5.3.4.

Proof. We have

$$N_2/(C_1 \ltimes T_1) = N \simeq (C_2 \ltimes G_3) \ltimes (\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times T_2)$$

(the same $N$ as in Lemma 1.5.2.6). We may therefore consider, as we have done above, the representation $\mathbb{C}^3 \oplus (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ of the quotient $C_2 \ltimes \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ of $N$ as an $N_2$-representation. A generic line in $\mathbb{C}^3 \oplus (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ gives a section for
this action which replaces the group $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ in the formula for $N_2$ by a group $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \times \text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$. Considering the representation $\mathbb{C}^2 \oplus (\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee$ for the section group and a generic line in this representation, we see that we may reduce $N_2$ to the group

$$N_2 = (C_1 \times C_2 \times \mathcal{G}_3) \rtimes ((\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})^2 \times T_1 \times T_2)$$

where $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})^2$ is central. Thus the Lemma follows.

The way it was constructed the group $H$ has a natural representation on the space $\Delta \oplus \Delta$. It is almost free. The following Lemma concludes the proof for $E_7$.

**Lemma 1.5.3.6.** The quotient $Q = \Delta/(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2)$ is rational. $\mathcal{G}_3$ acts on the space $Q \times Q$ of $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2)^2$-orbits in $\Delta \oplus \Delta$ and the $\mathcal{G}_3$-action on $Q$ is birational to a linear action. More precisely, there is an $\mathcal{G}_3$-equivariant birational map

$$Q \dashrightarrow \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C}^3$$

where $\mathcal{G}_3$ acts trivially on $\mathbb{C}$ and by permutation of coordinates on $\mathbb{C}^3$. Hence $(\Delta \oplus \Delta)/H$ is rational.

**Proof.** The proof is more or less already contained in the proof of Proposition 1.5.2.2 but we give an independent argument here. Recall that a typical element of $\Delta$ can be written

$$\delta = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & c \end{array} \right), \left( \begin{array}{ccc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d \\ e & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right)$$

and $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2)$ acts via

$$\lambda \cdot \delta = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & c \end{array} \right), \left( \begin{array}{ccc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d \\ e & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right)$$

(where $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} = \langle \iota \rangle$) and $(\lambda, \mu) \in (\mathbb{C}^*)^2$ acts via

$$(\lambda, \mu) \cdot \delta = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} \lambda \mu a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^{-1} \mu^{-1} b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^{-1} \mu c \end{array} \right), \left( \begin{array}{ccc} \lambda^2 \mu^{-1} c & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^{-2} \mu d & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda \mu^{-2} f \end{array} \right)$$
The group $S_3$ with generators $\tau_2$, $\tau_3$ also acts via
\[
\tau_2 \cdot \delta = \left(\begin{pmatrix} e & 0 \\ 0 & f \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} d & 0 \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix}\right),
\]
\[
\tau_3 \cdot \delta = \left(\begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} f & 0 \\ 0 & e \end{pmatrix}\right).
\]
Interpreting $\Delta$ as the times the diagonal subspace in octonions, we know that the functions
\[
f_1 = \langle X, X \rangle, \ f_2 = \langle Y, Y \rangle, \ f_3 = \langle Z, Z \rangle, \ F = \langle X, Y Z \rangle
\]
are invariant under $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2)$, concretely,
\[
f_1 = ab, \ f_2 = cd, \ f_3 = ef, \ F = adf + bce,
\]
so $F$ is $S_3$-invariant, and $S_3$ permutes $f_1$, $f_2$, $f_3$. To conclude the proof it remains to notice that
\[
\Delta/(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \ltimes (\mathbb{C}^*)^2) \to \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathbb{C}^3,
\]
\[
[\text{diag}(a, b), \text{diag}(c, d), \text{diag}(e, f)] \mapsto (F, f_1, f_2, f_3)
\]
is birational: one needs only check injectivity because dominance follows from dimensional reasons. If two elements $\delta_1$ and $\delta_2$ in $\Delta$ with the same invariants are given, one may apply torus elements to both of them to put them in the forms
\[
\delta'_1 = \left(\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} e_1 & 0 \\ 0 & f_1 \end{pmatrix}\right),
\]
\[
\delta'_2 = \left(\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} e_2 & 0 \\ 0 & f_2 \end{pmatrix}\right),
\]
but then the equality of the invariants $f_3$ and $F$ for these amounts to the equality of the symmetric functions in $e_i$ and $f_i$, $i = 1, 2$. Thus one can conclude by applying $\iota$ if necessary.

\subsection*{1.5.4 Concluding remarks}

The investigation of the stable birational type of generically free linear quotients for the exceptiona group $E_8$ is not readily amenable to the techniques
of the previous subsections since it does not have representations of small dimension with nontrivial stabilizer in general position which would furnish an initial reduction step.

Let us mention

**Proposition 1.5.4.1.** Generically free linear quotients for the groups $\text{SO}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and $\text{O}_n(\mathbb{C})$ are stably rational.

**Proof.** In the sum $V \oplus \cdots \oplus V$ of $n$ standard representations we consider the subvariety $X$ which consists of $n$-tuples of mutual orthogonal nonzero vectors in $V$. It is birational to a tower of vector bundles over $V$, and the $\text{SO}_n(\mathbb{C})$-(resp. $\text{O}_n(\mathbb{C})$)-action on $X$ has a linear section, namely a product of generic lines in the factors $V$. Thus we reduce the question to the group $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})^{n-1}$ for $\text{SO}_n(\mathbb{C})$ and to $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}^n$ for $\text{O}_n(\mathbb{C})$. The assertion follows. □

The groups $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$ also act on the variety $X$ from the previous proof, and considering the section given there, one sees that the question of stable rationality of generically free $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$-quotients reduces to a group $H_n$ which is the preimage of $(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})^{n-1} \subset \text{SO}_n(\mathbb{C})$ in $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$. But the general question remains open for this group.

For $n \leq 6$ the group $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$ is special due to exceptional isomorphisms in the Dynkin diagrams.

In [Kord], Kordonskii proves the stable rationality for $\text{Spin}_7(\mathbb{C})$ and $\text{Spin}_{10}(\mathbb{C})$. 
Chapter 2

Techniques for proving rationality and some recent results for moduli spaces of plane curves

2.1 Introduction

In this chapter we collect, in all brevity, the main methods for approaching the rationality problem (Problem 1.2.1.5). In each case we list some illustrative results obtained by the respective method as a guide to the literature, or develop applications in the text itself.

2.2 Methods

2.2.1 Slice method and 2-form trick

Given a linear algebraic group $G$ and $G$-variety $X$, the study of birational properties of the quotient $X/G$ can be reduced to a smaller variety and smaller group $H < G$ in the following way.

**Definition 2.2.1.1.** A $(G, H)$-section of $X$ is an irreducible $H$-stable subvariety $Y$ in $X$ whose translates by elements of $G$ are dense in $X$, and with the property that if $g \in G$ carries two points in $Y$ into one another, then $g$ is already in $H$. 

61
Then $Y/H$ is birational to $X/G$ as can be seen by restricting rational functions on $X$ to $Y$ which induces an isomorphism of invariant function fields. The slice method, consisting in finding a $(G, H)$-section as above, is not so much a direct method for proving rationality as rather a preliminary or intermediate simplification step applied in the course of the study of the birational properties of a given space. As such it corresponds to the simple idea of reduction to normal form.

The so called 2-form trick (see [Shep], Prop. 8) has already been mentioned above, and is contained in Theorem 1.3.2.7 in conjunction with Example 1.3.2.8. We phrase it here again in more explicit form for reference.

**Theorem 2.2.1.2.** Let $E$ be a finite dimensional representation of odd dimension of a reductive group $G$, and let $V$ be a subrepresentation of $\Lambda^2(E)^\vee$. Let $Z$ be the kernel of the action of $G$ on $\mathbb{P}(E)$, and suppose $Z$ acts trivially on $\mathbb{P}(V)$. Assume that the action of $G/Z$ on $\mathbb{P}(E)$ is almost free and that there exists a $G/Z$-linearized line bundle $\mathcal{L}$ on $\mathbb{P}(V) \times \mathbb{P}(E)$ such that $\mathcal{L}$ cuts out $\mathcal{O}(1)$ on the fibres of the projection to $\mathbb{P}(E)$.

Suppose that for some $v_0 \in V$ the associated 2-form in $\Lambda^2(E)^\vee$, viewed as a skew-symmetric map $E \to E^\vee$, has maximal rank $\dim E - 1$. Then the rational map

$$\varphi : \mathbb{P}(V) \dasharrow \mathbb{P}(E),$$

associating to a 2-form its kernel, is well-defined, and if $\dim V > \dim E$, $\dim \varphi^{-1}(\varphi([v_0])) = \dim V - \dim E$, then $\varphi$ is dominant. Hence, if $\mathbb{P}(E)/G$ is stably rational of level $\leq \dim V - \dim E$, then $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$ is rational.

This method was used in [Shep] to prove the rationality of the moduli spaces $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d \mathbb{C}^3)^\vee/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ of plane curves of degrees $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$.

To give an illustration of both the slice method and 2-form trick we will study the invariant function field

$$K_d = \mathbb{C} \left( \text{Sym}^2 (\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \mathbb{C}^3 \right)^{\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^*}.$$

Recall that a theta-characteristic $\theta$ on a smooth plane curve $C$ of degree $d$ is a line bundle which is a square root of the canonical line bundle $\omega_C$. Then the above function field is the field of rational functions on the moduli space of pairs $(C, \theta)$ where $C$ is a smooth plane curve of degree $d$ as above and $\theta$ a theta-characteristic on $C$ with $h^0(C, \theta) = 0$, see [Beau00]. So $C$ is the
2.2. METHODS

discriminant curve of a net of quadrics in $\mathbb{P}^{d-1}$; the above invariant function field may also be interpreted as the moduli space of nets of quadrics in $\mathbb{P}^{d-1}$. At the 2008 Geometric Invariant Theory Conference in Göttingen, F. Catanese asked whether $\mathbb{K}_d$ was rational; this may in general be quite tricky to decide, in particular for $d$ even (note that $\mathbb{K}_4$ is the function field of $\mathcal{M}_3$, and the proof of rationality of $\mathcal{M}_3$ presented great difficulties, see [Kat92/2], [Kat96]). We assume $d$ odd in the sequel and show how the problem may be reduced to the question of rationality for a simpler invariant function field (this approach suggests that the problems of rationality of $\mathbb{K}_d$ for $d$ odd and even are interrelated, and there could be an inductive procedure for proving rationality for all $d$). For $d = 5$ this approach was worked out in [Kat92/1].

Note that canonically $\mathbb{C}^3 \simeq \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$, so that

$$\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \mathbb{C}^3 \simeq \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \subset \Lambda^2((\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)$$

so that by the 2-form trick we may obtain a rational map

$$\varphi : \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3).$$

We need

**Lemma 2.2.1.3.** The inclusion

$$\iota : \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \subset \Lambda^2((\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)$$

is given in terms of coordinates $x_1, \ldots, x_d$ in $(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee$ and $y_1, y_2, y_3$ in $(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ by

$$\iota((x_i x_j) \otimes (y_k \wedge y_l)) = (x_i \otimes y_k) \wedge (x_j \otimes y_l) + (x_j \otimes y_k) \wedge (x_i \otimes y_l).$$

The map $\varphi : \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3)$ is dominant for odd $d \geq 5$.

**Proof.** We just have to check the well-definedness and dominance of $\varphi$. If $d = 5$ then the element

$$\omega = (x_5^2 - 2x_1 x_2) \otimes (y_2 \wedge y_3) + (x_1^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2) \otimes (y_1 \wedge y_3)$$

$$+ (2x_4 x_5 - 2x_2 x_3) \otimes (y_1 \wedge y_2)$$

when viewed as an element of $\Lambda^2((\mathbb{C}^5)^\vee \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)$ or alternatively an antisymmetric $15 \times 15$-matrix, has rank exactly 14. Thus, since $d - 5$ is even, it suffices to indicate an element in

$$\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \subset \Lambda^2((\mathbb{C}^2)^\vee \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee)$$
whose associated $6 \times 6$ antisymmetric matrix has maximal rank: we decompose $\mathbb{C}^{d-5} \otimes \mathbb{C}^3 = (\mathbb{C}^2 \otimes \mathbb{C}^3) \oplus \cdots \oplus (\mathbb{C}^2 \otimes \mathbb{C}^3)$ ($(d - 5)/2$ times) and consider an antisymmetric matrix of block diagonal form with one $15 \times 15$ block and $(d - 5)/2$ blocks of size $6 \times 6$. An element of the required form is

$$\pi_j = x_j^2 \otimes (y_1 \wedge y_2) + (x_j x_{j+1}) \otimes (y_1 \wedge y_3) + x_{j+1}^2 \otimes (y_2 \wedge y_3)$$

(here $j$ runs over the even numbers between 6 and $d - 1$). Thus we have found an element in the image of $\iota$ with one-dimensional kernel for every $d$, namely

$$\kappa = \omega + \sum_j \pi_j.$$ 

Thus $\varphi$ is well-defined for $d \geq 5$, $d$ odd. Moreover, the kernel of $\iota(\kappa)$ is spanned exactly by the matrix in $\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3$ which in terms of coordinates $e_1, \ldots, e_d$ in $\mathbb{C}^d$ and $f_1, f_2, f_3$ in $\mathbb{C}^3$ dual to the $x_i$ and $y_j$ is

$$m = e_1 \otimes f_1 + e_2 \otimes f_2 + e_3 \otimes f_3$$

(note that it suffices to check this for $d = 5$, since the $\pi_j$ vanish on $m$ by construction). Since $\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ has a dense orbit on $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3)$ (the matrices of maximal rank), and $m$ has maximal rank, this checks dominance of $\varphi$. 

Thus we see that if we put

$$L := \overline{\varphi^{-1}([m])} \subset \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^3$$

then $L$ is a linear subspace which is a $(\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}), H)$-section of $\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^3$ where $H$ is the stabilizer of $[m] \in \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3)$ in $\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$. Moreover,

$$K_d \simeq \mathbb{C}(L)^{H \times \mathbb{C}^*}.$$ 

We would like to describe the $H$-representation $L$ more explicitly. We note that $\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ acts on $\mathbb{C}^d \otimes \mathbb{C}^3$, viewed as $d \times 3$-matrices, as

$$(A, B) \cdot M = AMB^t, \quad (A, B) \in \text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}), \ M \in \text{Mat}(d \times 3, \mathbb{C})$$
and consequently
\[
H = \left\{ \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^{d-3} & 0 \\ * & \lambda^{-3} S \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \right\}^{t} , s \mid S \in SL_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}), s \in SL_{3}(\mathbb{C}), \lambda \in \mathbb{C}^{*} \right\}.
\]

We introduce some further notation. We denote by
\[
P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} s & 0 \\ * & S \end{pmatrix} \mid S \in GL_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}), s \in GL_{3}(\mathbb{C}) \right\} \subset GL_{d}(\mathbb{C})
\]
the indicated parabolic subgroup of \( GL_{d}(\mathbb{C}) \) and put
\[
P' = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} s & 0 \\ * & S \end{pmatrix} \mid S \in SL_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}), s \in SL_{3}(\mathbb{C}) \right\}.
\]

\( P' \) is a subgroup of \( H \) in the natural way; we will investigate the structure of \( L \) as \( P' \)-module first and afterwards do the bookkeeping for the various torus actions. Associated to the standard representation of \( GL_{d}(\mathbb{C}) \) on \( \mathbb{C}^{d} \) and the parabolic \( P \) we have the \( P \)-invariant subspace \( F \) below and complement \( E \):
\[
F := \langle e_{4}, \ldots, e_{d} \rangle \subset \mathbb{C}^{d}, \ E := \langle e_{1}, e_{2}, e_{3} \rangle \subset \mathbb{C}^{d},
\]
is that we have a filtration
\[
\text{Sym}^{3}(F) \subset \text{Sym}^{3}(F) \oplus \text{Sym}^{2}(F) \otimes E \subset \\
\text{Sym}^{3}(F) \oplus \text{Sym}^{2}(F) \otimes E \oplus F \otimes \text{Sym}^{2}(E) \subset \text{Sym}^{3}(\mathbb{C}^{d}).
\]

Then we claim

**Lemma 2.2.1.4.** There is an isomorphism of \( P' \)-modules (for \( d \geq 5 \) odd)
\[
L \simeq \text{Sym}^{3}(\mathbb{C}^{d})/\text{Sym}^{3}(F).
\]

**Proof.** We first remark that the dimensions are right: in fact
\[
\dim L = \dim \text{Sym}^{2}(\mathbb{C}^{d})^{\vee} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{3} - \dim \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^{d} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{3})
\]
\[
= 3 \binom{d + 1}{2} - (3d - 1) = \frac{3}{2} d^{2} - \frac{3}{2} d + 1
\]
whereas
\[
\dim(\text{Sym}^3(C^d)/\text{Sym}^3(F)) = \dim(\text{Sym}^3(C^d)) - \dim(\text{Sym}^3(F)) \\
= \left(\frac{d+2}{3}\right) - \left(\frac{d-1}{3}\right) \\
= \frac{(d+2)(d+1)d - (d-1)(d-2)(d-3)}{6} \\
= \frac{3}{2}d^2 - \frac{3}{2}d + 1.
\]

We will construct a \(P'\)-isomorphism \(\text{Sym}^3(C^d)/\text{Sym}^3(F) \to L\). The representation of the stabilizer group \(H \subset \text{SL}_d(C) \times \text{SL}_3(C)\) in \(\text{Sym}^2(C^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(C^3)^\vee\) induces a representation of the subgroup \(P' \subset H\) which is isomorphic to

\[
P' \to \text{Aut}(\text{Sym}^2(C^d) \otimes C^3)
\]

where the action of \(P'\) on \(\text{Sym}^2(C^d)\) is obtained by restricting the usual action of \(\text{SL}_d(C)\) to the subgroup \(P'\), and the action of \(P'\) on \(C^3\) is given by

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
  s & 0 \\
  * & S
\end{pmatrix} \cdot v = s \cdot v.
\]

We identify the representation \(L\) in this picture by showing that there is a unique subspace of dimension

\[
\frac{3}{2}d^2 - \frac{3}{2}d + 1
\]

in \(\text{Sym}^2(C^d) \otimes C^3\) which is invariant under the semisimple subgroup \(\text{SL}_{d-3}(C) \times \text{SL}_3(C) \subset P'\). One has

\[
\text{Sym}^2(C^d) \otimes C^3 \simeq \text{Sym}^2(F \oplus E) \otimes E \\
\simeq (\text{Sym}^2(F) \oplus (F \otimes E) \oplus (\text{Sym}^2(E))) \otimes E \\
\simeq (\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E) \oplus (F \otimes \Lambda^2(E)) \oplus (F \otimes \text{Sym}^2(E)) \\
\oplus \text{Sym}^3(E) \oplus \Sigma^{2,1}(E)
\]

where the last two lines give the decomposition into irreducible \(\text{SL}_{d-3}(C) \times \text{SL}_3(C)\)-modules. The dimensions of these, listed in the order in which they occur in the last two lines of the previous formula, are

\[
3 \cdot \binom{d-2}{2}, 3(d-3), 6(d-3), 10, 8.
\]
Now we always have
\[
\frac{3}{2}d^2 - \frac{3}{2}d + 1 - (3(d - 3) + 6(d - 3) + 10 + 8) = \frac{3}{2}d^2 - \frac{21}{2}d + 10 > 0
\]
as soon as \(d \geq 7\). Thus then \((\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E) \subset L\) and

\[
\dim L - \dim(\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E) = 6d - 8.
\]

Certainly, \(3(d - 3) + 10 + 8 = 3d + 9 < 6d - 8\) for \(d \geq 7\), so we find

\[
L = (\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E) \oplus (F \otimes \text{Sym}^2(E)) \oplus \text{Sym}^3(E).
\]

This is also true for \(d = 5\): here \(\dim L = 31\) and the dimensions of the previous representations are 9, 6, 12, 10, 8. Experimenting a little shows that we have to take again the 9, 12 and 10 dimensional representations to get 31. Now

\[
\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^3 \simeq (\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^d)/(\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes F)
\]
as \(P'\)-representations. The composition of the inclusion with the projection:

\[
\text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d) \subset \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^d \to (\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes \mathbb{C}^d)/(\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \otimes F)
\]
is \(P'\)-equivariant, and again viewing this as a map of \(\text{SL}_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\)-modules or, equivalently, using the splitting \(\mathbb{C}^d = F \oplus E\), we find that this map induces the desired \(P'\)-isomorphism

\[
\text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d)/\text{Sym}^3(F) \to L.
\]

Remark that \(\text{Sym}^3(E) \subset \text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d)\) maps to \(L\) nontrivially, whence also the copies of \(\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E\) and \(F \otimes \text{Sym}^2(E)\) contained in \(\text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d)\) map to \(L\) nontrivially by \(P'\)-invariance.

We can now easily obtain

**Proposition 2.2.1.5.** For the field

\[
\mathbb{K}_d = \mathbb{C} \left( \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d) \right)^{\text{SL}_d(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^*}
\]
one has the isomorphism

\[
\mathbb{K}_d \simeq \mathbb{C}(\text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d)/\text{Sym}^3(F))^P.
\]
Proof. We have seen $\mathbb{K}_d \simeq \mathbb{C}(L)^{H \times \mathbb{C}^*}$, $\mathbb{C}^*$ acting by homotheties. The group $P$ is generated by the group $P'$ and the two dimensional torus

$$T = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} t_1 \text{Id}_3 & 0 \\ 0 & t_2 \text{Id}_{d-3} \end{pmatrix} \mid t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{C}^\ast \right\}.$$ 

On the other hand, one may view $P'$ as a subgroup of $H \times \mathbb{C}^*$ via the assignment

$$\begin{pmatrix} s & 0 \\ * & S \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} s & 0 \\ * & S \end{pmatrix}^{-1}, s \end{pmatrix}, 1.$$ 

and there is also a two dimensional torus $\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$ embedded into $H \times \mathbb{C}^*$ via

$$(\lambda, \mu) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^{d-3} \text{Id}_3 & 0 \\ * & \lambda^{-3} \text{Id}_{d-3} \end{pmatrix}^{-1}, \text{Id}_3 \end{pmatrix}, \mu.$$ 

and $H \times \mathbb{C}^*$ is generated by $P'$ and $\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$. We also know that there is the isomorphism

$$\text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^d)/\text{Sym}^3(F) \rightarrow L$$

of $P'$-modules. Thus to prove the Proposition, it is sufficient to show that under this isomorphism $T$-orbits transform into $\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$-orbits. This is straightforward to check: we have seen that as $\text{SL}_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representations

$$L = (\text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E) \oplus (F \otimes \text{Sym}^2(E)) \oplus \text{Sym}^3(E)$$

and then

$$\begin{pmatrix} t_1 \text{Id}_3 & 0 \\ 0 & t_2 \text{Id}_{d-3} \end{pmatrix} \in T$$

acts as a homothety on $\text{Sym}^{2-i}(F) \otimes \text{Sym}^{i+1}(E)$, $i = 0, 1, 2$, namely as multiplication by $t_2^{2-i}t_1^{i+1}$; but $(\lambda, \mu) \in \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$ likewise acts via homotheties on the irreducible summands of $L$ (as $\text{SL}_{d-3}(\mathbb{C}) \times \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representation) viewed as a subspace in $\text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^d)^\vee \otimes \Lambda^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$, namely by multiplication by $\lambda^{A+i+B}\mu$, some $A$ and $B$ in $\mathbb{Z}$. This concludes the proof of the Proposition. \qed
As we pointed out above, Proposition 2.2.1.5 does not solve the initial rationality problem for plane curves of odd degree with theta-characteristic, but we thought it useful to record this important reduction step as an illustration of the methods introduced in this section.

The decomposition
\[ L = \left( \text{Sym}^2(F) \otimes E \right) \oplus \left( F \otimes \text{Sym}^2(E) \right) \oplus \text{Sym}^3(E) \]

suggests that there may be an inductive procedure to reduce rationality of \( \mathbb{K}_d \) to rationality of \( \mathbb{K}_{d-3} \).

### 2.2.2 Double bundle method

The main technical point is the so-called "no-name lemma".

**Lemma 2.2.2.1.** Let \( G \) be a linear algebraic group with an almost free action on a variety \( X \). Let \( \pi : \mathcal{E} \to X \) be a \( G \)-vector bundle of rank \( r \) on \( X \). Then one has the following commutative diagram of \( G \)-varieties

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow{f} & X \times \mathbb{A}^r \\
\pi \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{pr}_1 \\
X & & \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( G \) acts trivially on \( \mathbb{A}^r \), \( \text{pr}_1 \) is the projection onto \( X \), and the rational map \( f \) is birational.

If \( X \) embeds \( G \)-equivariantly in \( \mathbb{P}(V) \), \( V \) a \( G \)-module, \( G \) is reductive and \( X \) contains stable points of \( \mathbb{P}(V) \), then this is an immediate application of descent theory and the fact that a vector bundle in the \( \acute{e} \)tale topology is a vector bundle in the Zariski topology. The result appears in [Bo-Ka]. A proof without the previous technical restrictions is given in [Ch-G-R], §4.3. The following result ([Bo-Ka], [Kat89]) is the form in which Lemma 2.2.2.1 is most often applied since it allows one to extend its scope to irreducible representations.

**Theorem 2.2.2.2.** Let \( G \) be a linear algebraic group, and let \( U, V \) and \( W, K \) be (finite-dimensional) \( G \)-representations. Assume that the stabilizer in general position of \( G \) in \( U, V \) and \( K \) is equal to one and the same subgroup \( H \) in \( G \) which is also assumed to equal the ineffectiveness kernel in these
representations (so that the action of $G/H$ on $U$, $V$, $K$ is almost free). The relations $\dim U - \dim W = 1$ and $\dim V - \dim U > \dim K$ are required to hold.

Suppose moreover that there is a $G$-equivariant bilinear map

$$\psi : V \times U \to W$$

and a point $(x_0, y_0) \in V \times U$ with $\psi(x_0, y_0) = 0$ and $\psi(x_0, U) = W$, $\psi(V, y_0) = W$.

Then if $K/G$ is rational, the same holds for $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$.

**Proof.** We abbreviate $\Gamma := G/H$ and let $\text{pr}_U$ and $\text{pr}_V$ be the projections of $V \times U$ to $U$ and $V$. By the genericity assumption on $\psi$, there is a unique irreducible component $X$ of $\psi^{-1}(0)$ passing through $(x_0, y_0)$, and there are non-empty open $\Gamma$-invariant sets $V_0 \subset V$ resp. $U_0 \subset U$ where $\Gamma$ acts with trivial stabilizer and the fibres $X \cap \text{pr}_V^{-1}(v)$ resp. $X \cap \text{pr}_U^{-1}(u)$ have the expected dimensions $\dim U - \dim W = 1$ resp. $\dim V - \dim W$. Thus

$$\text{pr}_V^{-1}(V_0) \cap X \to V_0, \quad \text{pr}_U^{-1}(U_0) \cap X \to U_0$$

are $\Gamma$-equivariant bundles, and by Lemma 2.2.2.1 one obtains vector bundles

$$(\text{pr}_V^{-1}(V_0) \cap X)/\Gamma \to V_0/\Gamma, \quad (\text{pr}_U^{-1}(U_0) \cap X)/\Gamma \to U_0/\Gamma$$

of rank 1 and $\dim V - \dim W$ and there is still a homothetic $T := \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$-action on these bundles. By Theorem 1.2.1.7, the action of the torus $T$ on the respective base spaces of these bundles has a section over which the bundles are trivial; thus we get

$$\mathbb{P}(V)/\Gamma \sim (\mathbb{P}(U)/\Gamma) \times \mathbb{P}^{\dim V - \dim W - 1} = (\mathbb{P}(U)/\Gamma) \times \mathbb{P}^{\dim V - \dim U}.$$

On the other hand, one may view $U \oplus K$ as a $\Gamma$-vector bundle over both $U$ and $K$; hence, again by Lemma 2.2.2.1,

$$U/\Gamma \times \mathbb{P}^{\dim K} \sim K/\Gamma \times \mathbb{P}^{\dim U}.$$ 

Since $U/\Gamma$ is certainly stably rationally equivalent to $\mathbb{P}(U)/\Gamma$ of level at most one, the inequality $\dim V - \dim U > \dim K$ insures that $\mathbb{P}(V)/\Gamma$ is rational as $K/\Gamma$ is rational. \qed
2.2. METHODS

In [Kat89] this is used to prove the rationality of the moduli spaces \( \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(C^3)\vee)/\text{SL}_3(C) \) of plane curves of degree \( d \equiv 0 \pmod{3} \) and \( d \geq 210 \). A clever inductive procedure is used there to reduce the genericity requirement for the occurring bilinear maps \( \psi \) to a purely numerical condition on the labels of highest weights of irreducible summands in \( V, U, W \). This method is only applicable if \( d \) is large.

Likewise, in [Bo-Ka], the double bundle method is used to prove the rationality of \( \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(C^2)/\text{SL}_2(C) \), the moduli space of \( d \) points in \( \mathbb{P}^1 \), if \( d \) is even.

2.2.3 Method of covariants

Virtually all the methods for addressing the rationality problem (Problem 1.2.1.5) are based on introducing some fibration structure over a stably rational base in the space for which one wants to prove rationality; with the Double Bundle Method, the fibres are linear, but it turns out that fibrations with nonlinear fibres can also be useful if rationality of the generic fibre of the fibration over the function field of the base can be proven. The Method of Covariants (see [Shep]) accomplishes this by inner linear projection of the generic fibre from a very singular centre.

**Definition 2.2.3.1.** If \( V \) and \( W \) are \( G \)-modules for a linear algebraic group \( G \), then a covariant \( \varphi \) of degree \( d \) from \( V \) with values in \( W \) is simply a \( G \)-equivariant polynomial map of degree \( d \)

\[
\varphi : V \to W.
\]

In other words, \( \varphi \) is an element of \( \text{Sym}^d(V^\vee) \otimes W \).

The method of covariants, phrased in a way that we find quite useful, is contained in the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.2.3.2.** Let \( G \) be a connected linear algebraic group the semisimple part of which is a direct product of groups of type \( \text{SL} \) or \( \text{Sp} \). Let \( V \) and \( W \) be \( G \)-modules, and suppose that the action of \( G \) on \( W \) is generically free. Let \( Z \) be the ineffectivity kernel of the action of \( G \) on \( \mathbb{P}(W) \), and assume that the action of \( \bar{G} := G/Z \) is generically free on \( \mathbb{P}(W) \), and \( Z \) acts trivially on \( \mathbb{P}(V) \).

Let

\[
\varphi : V \to W
\]
be a (non-zero) covariant of degree $d$. Suppose the following assumptions hold:

(a) $\mathbb{P}(W)/G$ is stably rational of level $\leq \dim \mathbb{P}(V) - \dim \mathbb{P}(W)$.

(b) If we view $\varphi$ as a map $\varphi : \mathbb{P}(V) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}(W)$ and denote by $B$ the base scheme of $\varphi$, then there is a linear subspace $L \subset V$ such that $\mathbb{P}(L)$ is contained in $B$ together with its full infinitesimal neighbourhood of order $(d - 2)$, i.e.

$$\mathcal{I}_B \subset \mathcal{I}_{\mathbb{P}(L)}^{d-1}.$$ 

Denote by $\pi_L$ the projection $\pi_L : \mathbb{P}(V) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}(V/L)$ away from $\mathbb{P}(L)$ to $\mathbb{P}(V/L)$.

(c) Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{P}(V) & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & \mathbb{P}(W) \\
| & |_{\pi_L} & | \\
\mathbb{P}(V/L) & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & \mathbb{P}(W)
\end{array}$$

and assume that one can find a point $[\bar{p}] \in \mathbb{P}(V/L)$ such that

$$\varphi|_{\mathbb{P}(L + C\bar{p})} : \mathbb{P}(L + C\bar{p}) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}(W)$$

is dominant.

Then $\mathbb{P}(V)/G$ is rational.

Proof. By Corollary 1.2.2.12, the projection $\mathbb{P}(W) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}(W)/G$ has a rational section $\sigma$. Remark that property (c) implies that the generic fibre of $\pi_L$ maps dominantly to $\mathbb{P}(W)$ under $\varphi$, which means that the generic fibre of $\varphi$ maps dominantly to $\mathbb{P}(V/L)$ under $\pi_L$, too. Note also that the map $\varphi$ becomes linear on a fibre $\mathbb{P}(L + C\bar{q})$ because of property (b) and that thus the generic fibre of $\varphi$ is birationally a vector bundle via $\pi_L$ over the base $\mathbb{P}(V/L)$. Thus, if we introduce the graph

$$\Gamma = \{([q], [\bar{q}], [f]) \mid \pi_L([q]) = [\bar{q}], \varphi([q]) = [f]\} \subset \mathbb{P}(V) \times \mathbb{P}(V/L) \times \mathbb{P}(W)$$

and look at the diagram

\[\text{Diagram}\]
we find that the projection $\text{pr}_{23}$ is dominant and makes $\Gamma$ birationally into a vector bundle over $\mathbb{P}(V/L) \times \mathbb{P}(W)$. Hence $\Gamma$ is birational to a succession of vector bundles over $\mathbb{P}(W)$ or has a ruled structure over $\mathbb{P}(W)$. Since $\bar{G}$ acts generically freely on $\mathbb{P}(W)$, the generic fibres of $\varphi$ and $\bar{\varphi}$ can be identified and we can pull back this ruled structure via $\sigma$ (possibly replacing $\sigma$ by a suitable translate). Hence $\mathbb{P}(V)/\bar{G}$ is birational to $\mathbb{P}(W)/\bar{G} \times \mathbb{P}^N$ with $N = \dim \mathbb{P}(V) - \dim \mathbb{P}(W)$. Thus by property (a), $\mathbb{P}(V)/\bar{G}$ is rational. 

In [Shep] essentially this method is used to prove the rationality of the moduli spaces of plane curves of degrees $d \equiv 1 \pmod{9}$, $d \geq 19$.

It should be noted that covariants are also used in the proof of rationality for $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d\mathbb{C}^2)/\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$, the moduli space of $d$ points in $\mathbb{P}^1$, if $d$ is odd and sufficiently large (see [Kat83]).

2.2.4 Zero loci of sections in $G$-bundles and configuration spaces of points

The technique exposed below was explained to me by P. Katsylo whom I thank for his explanations. The proof is an immediate application of Lemma 2.2.2.1.

**Theorem 2.2.4.1.** Let $G$ be a linear algebraic group and let $\mathcal{E}$ be a rank $n$ $G$-vector bundle over a smooth projective $G$-variety $X$ of the same dimension $\dim X = n$. Suppose that $\mathcal{E}$ is spanned by its global sections $V := H^0(X, \mathcal{E})$. Let $N := c_n(\mathcal{E})$ be the $n$-th Chern class of $\mathcal{E}$. Suppose that the rational map

$$\alpha : V \longrightarrow X^{(N)} = \left( \prod_{i=1}^{N} X \right) / \mathfrak{S}_N$$

$$s \mapsto \mathcal{Z}(s)$$
assigning to a general global section of $\mathcal{E}$ its zeroes, is dominant (thus $\dim H^0(\mathcal{E}) \geq \dim X \cdot c_n(\mathcal{E})$). If the action of $G$ on the symmetric product $X^{(N)}$ is almost free, then $V/G$ is birational to $(X^{(N)}/G) \times \mathbb{C}^d$ where $d = \dim V - N \cdot \dim X$.

This result can be applied in two ways: if we know stable rationality of level $\leq \dim V - N \cdot \dim X$ of $X^{(N)}/G$, the configuration space of $N$ unordered points in $X$, then we can prove rationality of $V/G$. On the other hand, if rationality of $V/G$ is already known, stable rationality of $X^{(N)}/G$ follows. As an example, we consider the space

$$(\mathbb{P}^2)^{(7)}/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}),$$

the configuration space of 7 points in $\mathbb{P}^2$. Rationality of it is proven in the MPI preprint [Kat94].

**Theorem 2.2.4.2.** The space $(\mathbb{P}^2)^{(7)}/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ is rational.

**Proof.** If $T_{\mathbb{P}^2}$ denotes the tangent bundle of $\mathbb{P}^2$, then we have $c_2(T_{\mathbb{P}^2}(1)) = 7$, a general global section of $T_{\mathbb{P}^2}(1)$ has as zero locus seven points in $\mathbb{P}^2$, and the map

$$H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, T_{\mathbb{P}^2}(1)) \rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^2)^{(7)}$$

is dominant. Moreover, since $T_{\mathbb{P}^2}(1) \simeq \mathcal{R}^3(2)$, where $\mathcal{R}$ is the tautological subbundle on $\mathbb{P}^2$ (viewed as the Grassmannian of 2-dimensional subspaces in a three-dimensional vector space), we have by the theorem of Borel-Bott-Weil

$$H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, T(1)) \simeq V(1, 2)$$

as $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representations. Since $\dim V(1, 2) = 15$ the map

$$\mathbb{P}(H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, T_{\mathbb{P}^2}(1))) \rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^2)^{(7)}$$

is birational, and

$$(\mathbb{P}^2)^{(7)}/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \simeq \mathbb{P}(V(1, 2))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}).$$

We prove rationality of the latter quotient by a variant of the double bundle method as follows: consider the $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representation

$$V = V(1, 2) \oplus (V(0, 2) \oplus V(1, 0)) \oplus V(1, 0).$$
2.2. METHODS

The three-dimensional torus $T = \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*$ acts in $V$ via

$$(t_1, t_2, t_3) \cdot (f, (g_1, g_2), h) = (t_1f, (tg_1, tg_2), t_3h).$$

We define two $\text{SL}_3$-equivariant maps

$$\beta : V(1, 2) \times (V(0, 2) \oplus V(1, 0)) \to V(1, 1),$$

$$\psi : V(1, 2) \times V(1, 0) \to V(1, 0).$$

Recall that $V(a, b)$ is the kernel of

$$\Delta = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \partial_{e_i} \otimes \partial_{x_i} : \text{Sym}^a(\mathbb{C}^3) \otimes \text{Sym}^b(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \to \text{Sym}^{a-1}(\mathbb{C}^3) \otimes \text{Sym}^{b-1}(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$$

where $e_i$ and $x_j$ are dual coordinates in $\mathbb{C}^3$ and $(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$. In addition there is an $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant map

$$\omega : V(a, b) \times V(c, d) \to \text{Sym}^{a+c+1}(\mathbb{C}^3) \otimes \text{Sym}^{b+d-2}(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$$

$$\omega(r, s) = \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}_3} \text{sgn}(\sigma)e_{\sigma(1)}\frac{\partial r}{\partial x_{\sigma(2)}}\frac{\partial s}{\partial x_{\sigma(3)}}.$$  

Then

$$\beta(f, (g_1, g_2)) := \Delta(\omega(f, g_1)) + \Delta(f g_2), \quad \psi(f, g_2) := \Delta^2(f g_2^2)$$

(followed by the suitable equivariant projection if necessary). Thus $\beta$ is bilinear, $\psi$ is linear in the first and quadratic in the second argument. One sets

$$X := \{(f, (g_1, g_2), h) : \beta(f, (g_1, g_2)) = 0 \text{ and } h \wedge \psi(f, g_2) = 0\}$$

$$\subset V(1, 2) \oplus (V(0, 2) \oplus V(1, 0)) \oplus V(1, 0)$$

which is an $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ and $T$-invariant subvariety (note that the condition $h \wedge \psi(f, g_2) = 0$ means that $h$ and $\psi(f, g_2)$ are linearly dependent in $V(1, 0) = \mathbb{C}^3$). For the special points

$$F = 3e_2x_1x_3 - 2e_1x_1x_2 + 6e_3x_3x_2 - 2e_2x_2^2, \quad G_1 = x_1x_3 - x_2^2,$$

$$G_2 = 2e_2, \quad H = \psi(F, G_2) = -32e_2.$$
one checks that \((F, (G_1, G_2), H) \in X\) and that
\[
\dim \text{ker}(\beta(F, \cdot)) = 1, \quad \dim \text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2))) = 7,
\]
\[
\dim(\text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2))) \cap \text{ker}(\psi(\cdot, G_2))) = 4.
\]
So there is a unique irreducible \(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})\) and \(T\)-invariant component \(X_0\) of \(X\) passing through \((F, (G_1, G_2), H)\); we consider the two fibration structures on \(X_0\) via the projections
\[
\pi_1 : X_0 \to \text{V}(1, 2), \quad \pi_2 : X_0 \to (\text{V}(0, 2) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0)) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0).
\]
The fibres of \(\pi_1\) are generically two-dimensional linear spaces in which the subtorus \(\{1\} \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*\) still acts via rescaling. Hence
\[
\mathbb{P}(\text{V}(1, 2))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \simeq X_0/(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times T).
\]
On the other hand, via \(\pi_2\), \(X_0\) is generically a vector bundle over \((\text{V}(0, 2) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0)) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0)\) of rank 5: in fact, \(\dim \text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2))) = 7\) and \(\dim(\text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2))) \cap \text{ker}(\psi(\cdot, G_2))) = 4\), so that the preimage of the line \(\mathbb{C}H\) in \(\text{V}(1, 0)\) under \(\psi(\cdot, G_2)\) restricted to \(\text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2)))\) will be a 5-dimensional subspace of the 7-dimensional subspace \(\text{ker}(\beta(\cdot, (G_1, G_2)))\) of \(\text{V}(1, 2)\). Thus
\[
\mathbb{P}(\text{V}(1, 2))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \simeq
\left[((\text{V}(0, 2) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0)) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0))/(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*)\right] \times \mathbb{C}^4.
\]
But \(((\text{V}(0, 2) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0)) \oplus \text{V}(1, 0))/(\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times \mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{C}^*)\) has dimension 2. But a unirational surface is rational by Castelnuovo’s solution of the Lüroth problem for surfaces. \(\square\)

We conclude by remarking that Theorem 2.2.4.1 makes it obvious, in view of the theorem of Borel-Bott-Weil, that there is an intimate connection of the rationality problem 1.2.1.5 for a reductive group \(G\) and the problem of stable rationality/rationality of configuration spaces of (unordered) points in generalized flag varieties \(G/P\). Since Chern classes of homogeneous bundles \(E\) on \(G/P\) arising from a representation \(\rho : P \to \text{Aut}(W)\) can easily be calculated via the splitting principle in terms of the weights of \(\rho\), and \(H^0(G/P, E)\) is also quickly determined by Borel-Bott-Weil, it should not be too difficult to test the range of applicability of Theorem 2.2.4.1, but this remains to be done.
Chapter 3

The rationality of the moduli space of curves of genus 3

3.1 Introduction

The question whether $\mathcal{M}_3$ is a rational variety or not had been open for a long time until an affirmative answer was finally given by P. Katsylo in 1996. There is a well known transition in the behaviour of the moduli spaces $\mathcal{M}_g$ of smooth projective complex curves of genus $g$ from unirational for small $g$ to general type for larger values of $g$; the moral reason that $\mathcal{M}_3$ should have a good chance to be rational is that it is birational to a quotient of a projective space by a connected linear algebraic group. No variety of this form has been proved irrational up to now. More precisely, $\mathcal{M}_3$ is birational to the moduli space of plane quartic curves for $\text{PGL}_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivalence. All the moduli spaces $C(d)$ of plane curves of given degree $d$ are conjectured to be rational (see [Dolg2], p.162; in fact, there it is conjectured that all the moduli spaces of hypersurfaces of given degree $d$ in $\mathbb{P}^n$ for the $\text{PGL}_{n+1} \mathbb{C}$-action are rational. I do not know if this conjecture should be attributed to Dolgachev or someone else).

Katsylo’s proof is long and computational, and, due to the importance of the result, it seems desirable to give a more accessible and geometric treatment of the argument.

This chapter is divided into two main sections (sections 2 and 3) which are further divided into subsections. Section 2 treats roughly the contents of Katsylo’s first paper [Kat92/2] and section 3 deals with his second paper.
3.2 A remarkable \((\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})\)-section

3.2.1 \((G, H)\)-sections and covariants

A general, i.e. nonhyperelliptic, smooth projective curve \(C\) of genus 3 is realized as a smooth plane quartic curve via the canonical embedding, whence \(\mathcal{M}_3\) is birational to the orbit space \(C(4) := \mathbb{P}(H^0(\mathbb{P}^2, \mathcal{O}(4)))/\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\). We remark that whenever one has an affine algebraic group \(G\) acting on an irreducible variety \(X\), then, according to a result of Rosenlicht, there exists a nonempty invariant open subset \(X_0 \subset X\) such that there is a geometric quotient for the action of \(G\) on \(X_0\) (cf. [Po-Vi], thm. 4.4). In the following we denote by \(X/G\) any birational model of this quotient, i.e. any model of the field \(\mathbb{C}(X)^G\) of invariant rational functions.

The number of methods to prove rationality of quotients of projective spaces by connected reductive groups is quite limited (cf. [Dolg1] for an excellent survey). The only approach which our problem is immediately amenable to seems to be the method of \((G, H)\)-sections. (There are two other points of view I know of: The first is based on the remark that if we have a nonsingular plane quartic curve \(C\), the double cover of \(\mathbb{P}^2\) branched along \(C\) is a Del Pezzo surface of degree 2, and conversely, given a Del Pezzo surface \(S\) of degree 2, then \(|-K_S|\) is a regular map which exhibits \(S\) as a double cover of \(\mathbb{P}^2\) branched along a plane quartic \(C\); this sets up a birational isomorphism between \(\mathcal{M}_3\) and \(\mathfrak{D}(2)\), the moduli space of Del Pezzo surfaces of degree 2. We can obtain such an \(S\) by blowing up 7 points in \(\mathbb{P}^2\), and one can prove that \(\mathfrak{D}(2)\) is birational to the quotient of an open subset of \(P_7^7 := (\mathbb{P}^2)^7/\text{PGL}_3 \mathbb{C}\), the configuration space of 7 points in \(\mathbb{P}^2\) (which is visibly rational), modulo an action of the Weyl group \(W(E_7)\) of the root system of type \(E_7\) by Cremona transformations (note that \(W(E_7)\) coincides with the permutation group of the \((-1)\)-curves on \(S\) that preserves the incidence relations between them). This group is a rather large finite group, in fact, it has order \(2^{10} \cdot 3^4 \cdot 5 \cdot 7\). This approach does not seem to have led to anything definite in the direction of proving rationality of \(\mathcal{M}_3\) by now, but see [D-O] for more information.

The second alternative, pointed out by I. Dolgachev, is to remark that \(\mathcal{M}_3\) is birational to \(\mathcal{M}_3^\text{ev}\); the moduli space of genus 3 curves together with an even theta-characteristic; this is the content of the classical theorem due to [Kat96].
3.2. A REMARKABLE (SL₃ C, SO₃ C)-SECTION

G. Scorza. The latter space is birational to the space of nets of quadrics in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) modulo the action of SL₄ C, i.e. Grass(3, Sym²((C⁴)\^)) / SL₄ C. See [Dolg3], 6.4.2, for more on this. Compare also [Kat92/1], where the rationality of the related space Grass(3, Sym²((C⁵)\^)) / SL₃ C is proven; this proof, however, cannot be readily adapted to our situation, the difficulty seems to come down to that 4, in contrast to 5, is even).

**Definition 3.2.1.1.** Let \( X \) be an irreducible variety with an action of a linear algebraic group \( G, H < G \) a subgroup. An irreducible subvariety \( Y \subset X \) is called a \((G, H)-section\) of the action of \( G \) on \( X \) if

1. \( \overline{G \cdot Y} = X \);
2. \( H \cdot Y \subset Y \);
3. \( g \in G, gY \cap Y \neq \emptyset \implies g \in H \).

In this situation \( H \) is the normalizer \( N_G(Y) := \{ g \in G \mid gY \subset Y \} \) of \( Y \) in \( G \). The following proposition collects some properties of \((G, H)\)-sections.

**Proposition 3.2.1.2.**

1. The field \( \mathbb{C}(X)^G \) is isomorphic to the field \( \mathbb{C}(Y)^H \) via restriction of functions to \( Y \).
2. Let \( Z \) and \( X \) be \( G \)-varieties, \( f : Z \to X \) a dominant \( G \)-morphism, \( Y \) a \((G, H)\)-section of \( X \), and \( Y' \) an irreducible component of \( f^{-1}(Y) \) that is \( H \)-invariant and dominates \( Y \). Then \( Y' \) is a \((G, H)\)-section of \( Z \).

Part (2) of the proposition suggests that, to simplify our problem of proving rationality of \( C(4) \), we should look at covariants \( \text{Sym}^4((\mathbb{C}^3)\^) \to \text{Sym}^2((\mathbb{C}^3)\^) \) of low degree (\( \mathbb{C}^3 \) is the standard representation of SL₃ C). The highest weight theory of Cartan-Killing allows us to decompose \( \text{Sym}^4((\mathbb{C}^3)\^) \), \( i \in \mathbb{N} \), into irreducible subrepresentations (this is best done by a computer algebra system, e.g. Magma) and pick the smallest \( i \) such that \( \text{Sym}^2((\mathbb{C}^3)\^) \) occurs as an irreducible summand. This turns out to be 5 and \( \text{Sym}^2((\mathbb{C}^3)\^) \) occurs with multiplicity 2.

For nonnegative integers \( a, b \) we denote by \( V(a, b) \) the irreducible SL₃ C-module whose highest weight has numerical labels \( a, b \).

Let us now describe the two resulting independent covariants

\[ \alpha_1, \alpha_2 : V(0, 4) \to V(0, 2) \]
of order 2 and degree 5 geometrically. We follow a classical geometric method of Clebsch to pass from invariants of binary forms to contravariants of ternary forms (see [G-Y], §215). The covariants \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \) are described in Salmon’s treatise [Sal], p. 261, and p. 259, cf. also [Dix], p. 280-282. We start by recalling the structure of the ring of \( \text{SL}_2 \mathbb{C} \)-invariants of binary quartics ([Muk], section 1.3, [Po-Vi], section 0.12).

### 3.2.2 Binary quartics

Let

\[
f_4 = \xi_0 x_0^4 + 4\xi_1 x_0^3 x_1 + 6\xi_2 x_0^2 x_1^2 + 4\xi_3 x_0 x_1^3 + \xi_4 x_1^4
\]  

be a general binary quartic form. The invariant algebra \( R = \mathbb{C}[\xi_0, \ldots, \xi_4]^{\text{SL}_2 \mathbb{C}} \) is freely generated by two homogeneous invariants \( g_2 \) and \( g_3 \) (where subscripts indicate degrees):

\[
g_2(\xi) = \det \begin{pmatrix} \xi_0 & \xi_2 \\ \xi_2 & \xi_4 \end{pmatrix} - 4 \det \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 & \xi_2 \\ \xi_2 & \xi_3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (3.2)
\]

\[
g_3(\xi) = \det \begin{pmatrix} \xi_0 & \xi_1 & \xi_2 \\ \xi_1 & \xi_2 & \xi_3 \\ \xi_2 & \xi_3 & \xi_4 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (3.3)
\]

If we identify \( f_4 \) with its zeroes \( z_1, \ldots, z_4 \in \mathbb{P}^1 = \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\} \) and write

\[
\lambda = \frac{(z_1 - z_3)(z_2 - z_4)}{(z_1 - z_4)(z_2 - z_3)}
\]

for the cross-ratio, then

\[
g_3 = 0 \iff \lambda = -1, 2, \text{ or } \frac{1}{2},
\]

\[
g_2 = 0 \iff \lambda = -\omega \text{ or } -\omega^2 \text{ with } \omega = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}},
\]

the first case being commonly referred to as harmonic cross-ratio, the second as \textit{equi-anharmonic cross-ratio} (see [Cl], p. 171; the terminology varies a lot among different authors, however).

Clebsch’s construction is as follows: Let \( x, y, z \) be coordinates in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \), and let \( u, v, w \) be coordinates in the dual projective plane \( (\mathbb{P}^2)^\vee \). Let \( \varphi = \).
3.2. A REMARKABLE \((\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})\)-SECTION

Let \(ax^4 + 4bx^3y + \ldots\) be a general ternary quartic. We want to consider those lines in \(\mathbb{P}^2\) such that their intersection with the associated quartic curve \(C_\varphi\) is a set of points whose cross-ratio is harmonic resp. equi-anharmonic. Writing a line as \(ux + vy + wz = 0\) and substituting in (2) resp. (3), we see that in the equi-anharmonic case we get a quartic in \((\mathbb{P}^2)^\lor\), and in the harmonic case a sextic. More precisely this gives us two \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-equivariant polynomial maps

\[
\sigma : V(0, 4) \rightarrow V(0, 4)^\lor, \quad (3.4)
\]

\[
\psi : V(0, 4) \rightarrow V(0, 6)^\lor, \quad (3.5)
\]

and \(\sigma\) is homogeneous of degree 2 in the coefficients of \(\varphi\) whereas \(\psi\) is homogeneous of degree 3 in the coefficients of \(\varphi\) (we say \(\sigma\) is a contravariant of degree 2 on \(V(0, 4)\) with values in \(V(0, 4)\), and analogously for \(\psi\)). Finally we have the Hessian covariant of \(\varphi\):

\[
\text{Hess} : V(0, 4) \rightarrow V(0, 6) \quad (3.6)
\]

which associates to \(\varphi\) the determinant of the matrix of second partial derivatives of \(\varphi\). It is of degree 3 in the coefficients of \(\varphi\).

We will now cook up \(\alpha_1, \alpha_2\) from \(\varphi, \sigma, \psi, \text{Hess}\): Let \(\varphi\) operate on \(\psi\); by this we mean that if \(\varphi = ax^4 + 4bx^3y + \ldots\) then we act on \(\psi\) by the differential operator

\[
\alpha \frac{\partial^4}{\partial u^4} + 4b \frac{\partial^4}{\partial u^3 \partial v} + \ldots
\]

(i.e. we replace a coordinate by partial differentiation with respect to the dual coordinate). In this way we get a contravariant \(\rho\) of degree 4 on \(V(0, 4)\) with values in \(V(0, 2)\). If we operate with \(\rho\) on \(\varphi\) we get \(\alpha_1\).

We obtain \(\alpha_2\) if we operate with \(\sigma\) on \(\text{Hess}\).

This is a geometric way to describe \(\alpha_1, \alpha_2\). For every \(c = [c_1 : c_2] \in \mathbb{P}^1\) we get in this way a rational map

\[
f_c = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 : \mathbb{P}(V(0, 4)) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}(V(0, 2)) \quad (3.7)
\]

For the special quartics

\[
\varphi = ax^4 + by^4 + cz^4 + 6fy^2z^2 + 6gz^2x^2 + 6hx^2y^2 \quad (3.8)
\]
the quantities \( \alpha_1 \) and \( \alpha_2 \) were calculated by Salmon in [Sal], p. 257 ff. We reproduce the results here for the reader’s convenience. Put

\[
L := abc, \quad P := af^2 + bg^2 + ch^2, \quad R := fgh;
\]

Then

\[
\alpha_1 = (3L + 9P + 10R)(afx^2 + bgy^2 + chz^2) + (10L + 2P + 4R)(ghx^2 + hfy^2 + fgz^2) - 12(a^2f^3x^2 + b^2g^3y^2 + c^2h^3z^2); \\
\alpha_2 = (L + 3P + 30R)(afx^2 + bgy^2 + chz^2) + (10L - 6P - 12R)(ghx^2 + hfy^2 + fgz^2) - 4(a^2f^3x^2 + b^2g^3y^2 + c^2h^3z^2).
\]

Note that the covariant conic \(-\frac{1}{20}(\alpha_1 - 3\alpha_2)\) looks a little simpler.

Let us see explicitly, using (8)-(11), that \( f_c \) is dominant for every \( c \in \mathbb{P}^1 \); for \( a = b = c = f = g = h = 1 \) we get \( \alpha_1 = 48(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) \), \( \alpha_2 = 16(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) \), so the image of \( \varphi \) under \( f_c \) in this case is a nonsingular conic unless \( c = [-1 : 3] \). But for \( a = 1, b = c = 0, f = g = h = 1 \) we obtain \( \alpha_1 = 13x^2 + 6y^2 + 6z^2, \alpha_2 = 11x^2 - 18y^2 - 18z^2 \), and for these values \(-\alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2\) defines a nonsingular conic.

Let \( L_c \) be the linear system generated by 6 quintics which defines \( f_c \) and let \( B_c \) be its base locus; thus \( U_c := \mathbb{P}(V(0,4)) \setminus B \) is an \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-invariant open set, and if \( f_{c,0} := f_c|_{U_c} \), then \( X_c := f_{c,0}^{-1} (\mathcal{O}_h) \), where \( h_0 \) defines a non-singular conic, is a good candidate for an \( (\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}) \)-section of \( U_c \). We choose \( h_0 = xz - y^2 \).

**Proposition 3.2.2.1.** \( X_c \) is a smooth irreducible \( \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-invariant variety, \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \cdot X = \mathbb{P}(V(0,4)) \), and the normalizer of \( X_c \) in \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \) is exactly \( \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \). \( X_c \) is an \( (\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}) \)-section of \( U_c \).

**Proof.** The \( \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-invariance of \( X_c \) follows from its construction. We show that the differential \( d(f_{c,0})_x \) is surjective for all \( x \in X_c \): In fact,

\[
d(f_{c,0})_x(T_xU_c) \supset d(f_{c,0})_x(\mathfrak{sl}_3(x)) = \mathfrak{sl}_3(f_{c,0}(x)) = T_{ch_0} \mathbb{P}V(0,2)
\]

Here \( \mathfrak{sl}_3(x) \) denotes the tangent space to the \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-orbit of \( x \) in \( U_c \), i.e. if \( O_x : \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \rightarrow U_c \) is the map with \( O_x(g) = gx \), then we get a map
3.2. A REMARKABLE \((\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})\)-SECTION

\[ d(O_x)_e : \frak{sl}_3 \to T_x U_c, \text{ and } \frak{sl}_3(x) := \{d(O_x)_e(\xi) | \xi \in \frak{sl}_3 \}. \] Hence \(X_c\) is smooth.

Assume \(X_c\) were reducible, let \(X_1\) and \(X_2\) be two irreducible components. By prop. 2.1.2 (2) and the irreducibility of the group \(\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}\), \(X_1\) and \(X_2\) are \((\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})\)-sections of \(U_c\), so we can find \(g \in \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\), \(x_1 \in X_1\), \(x_2 \in X_2\), such that \(gx_1 = x_2\). But then, by the \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-equivariance of \(f_{c,0}\), \(g\) stabilizes \(\mathbb{C}h_0\) and is thus in \(\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}\). But, again by the irreducibility of \(\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}\), \(x_2\) is also a point of \(X_1\), i.e. \(X_1\) and \(X_2\) meet. This contradicts the smoothness of \(X_c\).

\[ \square \]

The trouble is that, if \(\overline{X}_c\) is the closure of \(X_c\) in \(\mathbb{P}(V(0,4))\), then \(\overline{X}_c\) is an irreducible component of the intersection of 5 quintics. To eventually prove rationality, however, we would like to have some equations of lower degree. This can be done for special \(c\).

### 3.2.3 From quintic to cubic equations

If \(\Gamma_{f_c} \subset \mathbb{P}V(0,4) \times \mathbb{P}V(0,2)\) is the graph of \(f_c\), it is natural to look for \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-equivariant maps

\[ \vartheta : V(0,4) \times V(0,2) \to V' \]

where \(V'\) is another \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-representation, \(\vartheta\) is a homogeneous polynomial map in both factors \(V(0,4), V(0,2)\), of low degree, say \(d\), in the first factor, linear in the second, and such that \(\Gamma_{f_c}\) is an irreducible component of \(\{(x,y) \in \mathbb{P}V(0,4) \times \mathbb{P}V(0,2) | \vartheta(x,y) = 0\}\). If \(V'\) is irreducible, there is an easy way to tell if \(\vartheta\) vanishes on \(\Gamma_{f_c}\) for some \(c \in \mathbb{P}^1\): This will be the case if \(V'\) occurs with multiplicity one in \(\text{Sym}^{d+5} V(0,4)\). Here is the result.

**Definition 3.2.3.1.** Let \(\Psi : V(0,4) \to V(2,2)\) be the up to factor unique \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-equivariant, homogeneous of degree 3 polynomial map with the indicated source and target spaces, and let \(\Phi : V(2,2) \times V(0,2) \to V(2,1)\) be the up to factor unique bilinear \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-equivariant map. Define \(\Theta : V(0,4) \times V(0,2) \to V(2,1)\) by \(\Theta(x,y) := \Phi(\Psi(x), y)\).

**Remark 3.2.3.2.** The existence and essential uniqueness of the maps of definition 2.3.1 can be easily deduced from known (and implemented in Magma) decomposition laws for \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-representations. That they are only determined up to a nonzero constant factor will never bother us, and we admit
this ambiguity in notation. The explicit form of \( \Psi, \Phi, \Theta \) will be needed later for checking certain non-degeneracy conditions through explicit computation. They can be found in Appendix A, formulas (64), (65).

**Theorem 3.2.3.3.** (1) The linear map \( \Theta(f, \cdot) : V(0, 2) \to V(2, 1) \) has one-dimensional kernel for \( f \) in an open dense subset \( V_0 \) of \( V(0, 4) \), and, in particular, \( \ker \Theta(h_0^2, \cdot) = \mathbb{C}h_0 \).

(2) For some \( c_0 \in \mathbb{P}^1 \), \( \Gamma_{f_{c_0}} \) is an irreducible component of \( \{ \Theta(x, y) = 0 \} \subset \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \times \mathbb{P}V(0, 2) \).

(3) \( \overline{X_{c_0}} \subset \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \) coincides with the closure \( \overline{X} \) in \( \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \) of the preimage \( X \) of \( h_0 \) under the morphism from \( \mathbb{P}V_0 \to \mathbb{P}V(0, 2) \) given by \( f \mapsto \ker \Theta(f, \cdot) \), and is thus an irreducible component of the algebraic set \( \{ cf | \Phi(\Psi(f), h_0) = 0 \} \subset \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \) defined by 15 cubic equations.

(4) The rational map \( \Psi : \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \subset \mathbb{P}V(2, 2) \) as well as its restriction to \( X \) are birational isomorphisms unto their images.

**Proof.** (1): One checks that \( V(2, 1) \) occurs with multiplicity one in the decomposition of \( \text{Sym}^a V(0, 4) \). Thus for some \( c_0 \in \mathbb{P}^1 \), we have \( \Theta(f, (c_0, 1) + c_0, 2) (f)) = 0 \) for all \( f \in V(0, 4) \). The fact that \( \ker \Theta(h_0^2, \cdot) = \mathbb{C}h_0 \) follows from a direct computation using the explicit form of \( \Theta \). Thus, by upper semicontinuity, (1) follows.

(2): We have seen in (1) that \( \Gamma_{f_{c_0}} \) is contained in \( \{ \Theta(x, y) = 0 \} \). Again by (1),

\[
\Gamma_{f_{c_0}} \cap ((U_{c_0} \cap \mathbb{P}V_0) \times \mathbb{P}V(0, 2)) = \{ \Theta(x, y) = 0 \} \cap ((U_{c_0} \cap \mathbb{P}V_0) \times \mathbb{P}V(0, 2)) \,.
\]

and (2) follows.

(3) follows from (2) and the definition of \( X_{c_0} \).

(4): Since \( X \) is an \( (\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}) \)-section of \( \mathbb{P}V_0 \), it suffices to prove that the \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-equivariant rational map \( \Psi : \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}V(0, 4) \) (defined e.g. in the point \( \mathbb{C}h_0 \)) is birational. We will do this by writing down an explicit rational inverse. To do this, remark that \( V(a, b) \) sits as an \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-invariant linear subspace inside \( \text{Sym}^a \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^b (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \) (it has multiplicity one in the decomposition into irreducibles), thus elements of \( V(a, b) \) may be viewed as tensors \( x = (x^{(1)}, \ldots, x^{(k)}) \in T^a \mathbb{C}^3 \), covariant of order \( b \) and contravariant of order
3.2. A REMARKABLE (SL₃ C, SO₃ C)-SECTION

\( a \), or of type \( \binom{n}{k} \). The inverse of the determinant tensor \( \det^{-1} \) is thus in \( T^0 \mathbb{C}^3 \). For \( f \in V(0,4) \) and \( g \in V(2,2) \) one defines a bilinear \( \mathrm{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-equivariant map \( \alpha : V(0,4) \times V(2,2) \rightarrow \text{Sym}^2 \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \), \( (f,g) \mapsto \alpha(f,g) \), as the contraction

\[
 s_{j_1j_2}^{i_1i_2i_3} := f^{i_1i_2i_4i_5}g_{i_5j_1}^{i_3i_4i_6} \det^{-1}_{j_2i_4i_6},
\]

followed by the symmetrization map. One checks that \( \text{Sym}^2 \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^3(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \) decomposes as \( V(2,3) \oplus V(1,2) \oplus V(0,1) \), but \( \text{Sym}^4 V(0,4) \) does not contain these as subrepresentations (use \texttt{Magma}) so \( \alpha(f, \Psi(f)) = 0 \) for all \( f \in V(0,4) \). But the explicit forms of \( \Psi \) and \( \alpha \) show that \( \ker \alpha(\cdot, \Psi(h_0^2)) = \mathbb{C} h_0^2 \), whence, by upper-semicontinuity, the dimension of the kernel of \( \alpha(\cdot, \Psi(f)) \) is one for all \( f \) in a dense open subset of \( V(0,4) \), and the rational map \( \Psi : \mathbb{P}V(0,4) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}V(2,2) \) has the rational inverse \( \Psi(f) \mapsto \ker \alpha(\cdot, \Psi(f)) \).

\( \square \)

Remark 3.2.3.4. It would probably be illuminating to have a geometric interpretation of the covariant \( \Psi : V(0,4) \rightarrow V(2,2) \) given above similar to the one for \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \) in subsection 2.2. Though there is a huge amount of classical projective geometry attached to plane quartics, I have been unable to find such a geometric description.

Clearly, \( \Psi \) vanishes on the cone of dominant vectors in \( V(0,4) \), and one may check, using the explicit formula for \( \Psi \) in Appendix A (64), that \( \Psi \) also vanishes on the \( \mathrm{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-orbit of the degree 4 forms in two variables, \( x \) and \( y \), say. However, this, together with the fact that \( \Psi \) is of degree 3, is not enough to characterize \( \Psi \) since the same holds also for e.g. the Hessian covariant.

Let us mention a different approach to obtaining a geometric interpretation of \( \Psi \) suggested by Igor Dolgachev whom we would like to thank for this. We start by describing the Poncelet invariant of pairs of conics in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) (cf. [Dolg3], section 2.2).

Let \( Q_1 \) and \( Q_2 \) are conics in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) defined by symmetric matrices \( A \) and \( B \) respectively, then

\[
 \mathcal{P}(A, B) := \text{tr}(B \cdot \text{Adj}(A)),
\]

where \( \text{Adj}(A) \) denotes the adjugate matrix of cofactors of \( A \), defines an invariant of pairs of conics whose vanishing has the following geometric meaning: if \( Q_1 \) and \( Q_2 \) are nonsingular, then \( \mathcal{P} \) is zero if and only if there exists a self-polar triangle of \( Q_1 \) inscribed in \( Q_2 \); the notion of self-polarity is defined as follows. Given a nonsingular conic \( Q \) in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) and a point \( p \in \mathbb{P}^2 \) the polar
line of \( p \) with respect to \( Q \) is the line through the the two points of \( Q \) whose tangent lines contain \( p \), and a set of three noncollinear lines \( l_1, l_2, l_3 \) form a self-polar triangle with respect to \( Q \) if \( l_i \) is the polar line with respect to \( Q \) of the point of intersection of the other two lines.

Moreover, the degree 2 covariant
\[
\mathcal{D} : V(2, 0) \to V(0, 2)
\]

\[
M \mapsto \text{Adj}(M),
\]

(where \( M \) is a symmetric 3 by 3 matrix) describes the passage from a conic to the dual conic. Thus we may view \( \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{D}(.), .) \) as an element of

\[
\text{Sym}^2(V(2, 0) \oplus V(0, 2)) = \text{Sym}^2V(2, 0) \otimes \text{Sym}^2V(0, 2) \oplus (\Lambda^2V(2, 0) \otimes \Lambda^2V(0, 2))
\]

in other words, we get a degree 2 invariant
\[
\hat{\mathcal{P}} : V(2, 2) \to \mathbb{C},
\]

which we want to call the \textit{Poncelet invariant} here. In the following, we use symbolic notation as in [G-Y], and denote temporarily by \( x = (x_1, x_2, x_3) \) and \( u = (u_1, u_2, u_3) \) dual sets of variables (coordinates on \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) and \( (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \)). Then if symbolically
\[
g = \alpha_x^2 \otimes \bar{\alpha}_u^2 = \beta_x^2 \otimes \bar{\beta}_u^2 \in V(2, 2) \subset \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \otimes \text{Sym}^2\mathbb{C}^3
\]

then
\[
\hat{\mathcal{P}} = (\alpha \beta (\bar{\alpha} \times \bar{\beta})
\]

(where \( \times \) is the vector product) and one easily checks that \( \hat{\mathcal{P}} \) is indeed nonzero. Moreover, if we write \( f \) in \( V(0, 4) \) symbolically as \( f = \alpha_x^4 = \beta_x^4 \), then the degree 3 covariant \( \Psi : V(0, 4) \to V(2, 2) \) which we are interested in is given by

\[
\Psi(f) = \pi_{2, 2} \circ (\alpha \beta \gamma)^2 \cdot \{(\beta \gamma u)(\alpha \gamma u)\alpha_x \beta_x \\
+ (\gamma \alpha u)(\beta \alpha u)\gamma_x \beta_x \\
+ (\alpha \beta u)(\gamma \beta u)\alpha_x \gamma_x \}
\]

where \( \pi_{2, 2} : \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^3) \otimes \text{Sym}(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \to V(2, 2) \) is the equivariant projection; note that the previous equality includes a choice of normalization of \( \Psi \) which
3.2. A REMARKABLE (SL₃ C, SO₃ C)-SECTION

we will adopt in this remark, since a priori it is only defined up to multiplication by a nonzero constant.

Now \( \hat{P} \circ \Psi \) is a degree 6 invariant of quartics! The degree 6 homogeneous piece of the invariant ring of ternary quartics is well-known ([Dix]): a vector space basis is given by the square of the degree 3 invariant of quartics

\[
I_3 = (\alpha \beta \gamma)^4
\]

and the catalecticant invariant \( I_6 \). We use the determinantal expression for \( I_6 \) given in [Dix]: if one writes a quartic in \( V(0, 4) \) as

\[
ax_1^4 + 4bx_1^3x_2 + 6cx_1^2x_2^2 + 4dx_1x_2^3 + ex_2^4
+ 4fx_1^3x_3 + 12gx_1^2x_2x_3 + 12hx_1x_2^2x_3 + 4ix_2^3x_3
+ 6jx_1^2x_3^2 + 12kx_1x_2x_3^2 + 6lx_2^2x_3^2
+ 4mx_1x_3^3 + 4nx_2x_3^3
+ px_3^4
\]

then

\[
I_6 = \det \begin{pmatrix}
a & c & j & g & f & b \\
c & e & l & i & h & d \\
j & l & p & n & m & k \\
g & i & n & l & k & h \\
f & h & m & k & j & g \\
b & d & k & h & g & c \\
\end{pmatrix}.
\]

Thus we have

\[
\hat{P} \circ \Psi = \lambda_1 I_6 + \lambda_2 I_3^2
\]

for some constants \( \lambda_1 \) and \( \lambda_2 \). We computed them using Macaulay2, and found

\[
\lambda_1 = 3, \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{3}{16}
\]

(where we normalize all invariants and covariants involved as described above).

We do not see the geometric meaning of this particular linear combination of \( I_3^2 \) and \( I_6 \), but believe there should be one. Previously, we had hoped one might get a pure multiple of either \( I_3^2 \) or \( I_6 \) in the end.
3.2.4 From cubic to quadratic equations

We have to fix some further notation.

**Definition 3.2.4.1.**

1. $Z$ is the affine cone in $V(2,2)$ over $\overline{\Psi(X)} \subset \mathbb{P}V(2,2)$.
2. $L$ is the linear subspace $L := \{ g \in V(2,2) \mid \Phi(g, h_0) = 0 \} \subset V(2,2)$.
3. $\epsilon : V(0,4) \times V(0,2) \to V(2,2)$ is the unique (up to a nonzero factor) nontrivial $\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant bilinear map with the indicated source and target spaces (the explicit form is in Appendix A (66)).
4. $\zeta : V(0,4) \times V(0,2) \to V(1,1)$ is the unique (up to factor) nontrivial $\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant map with the property that it is homogeneous of degree 2 in both factors of its domain (cf. Appendix A (67) for the explicit description). We put $\Gamma := \zeta(\cdot, h_0) : V(0,4) \to V(1,1)$.

Let us state explicitly what we are heading towards:

The affine cone $Z$ over the birational modification $\overline{\Psi(X)}$ of our $(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})$-section $X \subset \mathbb{P}V_0 \subset \mathbb{P}V(0,4)$ (whose closure in $\mathbb{P}V(0,4)$ was seen to be an irreducible component of an algebraic set defined by 15 cubic equations) has the following wonderful properties: $Z$ lies in $L$, the linear map $\epsilon(\cdot, h_0) : V(0,4) \to V(2,2)$ restricts to an $\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant isomorphism between $V(0,4)$ and $L$, and if, via this isomorphism, we transport $Z$ into $V(0,4)$ and call this $Y$, then the equations for $Y$ are given by $\Gamma$! More precisely, $Y$ is the unique irreducible component of $\Gamma^{-1}(0)$ passing through the point $h_0^2$, and $\Gamma$ maps $V(0,4)$ into a five-dimensional $\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$-invariant subspace of $V(1,1)$!

Thus, if we have carried out this program, $Y$ (or $Z$) will be proven to be an irreducible component of an algebraic set defined by 5 quadratic equations! This seems quite miraculous, but a satisfactory explanation why this happens probably requires an answer to the problem raised in remark 2.3.4.

We start with some preliminary observations: It is clear that $Z \subset L$ and $\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P}V(0,4))^{\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}} \simeq \mathbb{C}(Z)^{\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{C}^*}$, $\mathbb{C}^*$ acting by homotheties. In the following, we need the decomposition into irreducibles of $\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}$-modules such as $V(2,2)$, $V(2,1)$, $V(1,1)$ and $V(0,4)$ as $\text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$-modules. The patterns according to which irreducible representations of a complex semi-simple algebraic group
decompose when restricted to a smaller semi-simple subgroup are generally known as branching rules. In our case the answer is

\[ V(2, 2) = V(2, 2)_8 \oplus V(2, 2)_6 \oplus V(2, 2)_4 \oplus V(2, 2)'_4 \oplus V(2, 2)_0, \]  
(3.12)
\[ V(2, 1) = V(2, 1)_6 \oplus V(2, 1)_4 \oplus (2, 1)_2, \]  
(3.13)
\[ V(1, 1) = V(1, 1)_4 \oplus (1, 1)_2, \]  
(3.14)
\[ V(0, 4) = V(0, 4)_8 \oplus V(0, 4)_4 \oplus V(0, 4)_0. \]  
(3.15)

Here the subscripts indicate the numerical label of the highest weight of the respective \( \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-submodule of the ambient \( \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C} \)-module under consideration. Note also that \( \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C} \cong \text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \), so we are really back in the much classically studied theory of binary forms. It is not difficult (and fun) to check (12), (13), (14), (15) by hand; let us briefly digress on how this can be done (cf. [Fu-Ha]):

We fix the following notation. Let first \( n = 2l+1 \) be an odd integer, \( \mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{sl}_n \mathbb{C} \) the Lie algebra of \( \text{SL}_n \mathbb{C} \), and let \( \mathfrak{t}_\mathfrak{g} \) its standard torus of diagonal matrices of trace 0, and define the standard weights \( \epsilon_i \in \mathfrak{t}_\mathfrak{g}^* \), \( i = 1, \ldots, n \), by \( \epsilon_i(\text{diag}(x_1, \ldots, x_n)) := x_i \). Inside \( \mathfrak{g} \) we find \( \mathfrak{h} := \mathfrak{so}_n \mathbb{C} \) defined by

\[ \mathfrak{h} := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} X & Y & U \\ Z & -X^t & V \\ -V^t & -U^t & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mid X, Y, Z \in \mathfrak{gl}_l \mathbb{C}, Y^t = -Y^t, \right. \]
\[ \left. Z = -Z^t, U, V \in \mathbb{C}^l \right\}. \]

Then \( \mathfrak{t}_\mathfrak{h} := \{ \text{diag}(x_1, \ldots, x_l, -x_1, \ldots, -x_l, 0) \mid x_i \in \mathbb{C} \}; \) by abuse of notation we denote the restrictions of the functions \( \epsilon_i \) to \( \mathfrak{t}_\mathfrak{h} \) by the same letters. The fundamental weights of \( \mathfrak{g} \) are \( \pi_i := \epsilon_1 + \cdots + \epsilon_i, i = 1, \ldots, n-1 \), the fundamental weights of \( \mathfrak{h} \) are \( \omega_i := \epsilon_1 + \cdots + \epsilon_i, (1 \leq i \leq l-1) \) and \( \omega_l := (\epsilon_1 + \cdots + \epsilon_l)/2 \).

Let \( \Lambda_\mathfrak{g} \) and \( \Lambda_\mathfrak{h} \) be the corresponding weight lattices. \( \Lambda^+_\mathfrak{g} \) and \( \Lambda^+_\mathfrak{h} \) are the dominant weights. For \( \mathfrak{g} \) (and similarly for \( \mathfrak{h} \)) an irreducible representation \( V(\lambda) \) for \( \lambda \in \Lambda^+_\mathfrak{g} \) comes with its formal character

\[ \text{ch}_\lambda := \sum_{\mu \in \Pi(\lambda)} m_\lambda(\mu)e(\mu) \in \mathbb{Z}[\Lambda_\mathfrak{g}], \]

an element of the group algebra \( \mathbb{Z}[\Lambda_\mathfrak{g}] \) generated by the symbols \( e(\lambda) \) for \( \lambda \in \Lambda_\mathfrak{g} \), where \( \Pi(\lambda) \) means the weights of \( V(\lambda) \), and \( m_\lambda(\mu) \) is the dimension of the weight space corresponding to \( \mu \) in \( V(\lambda) \). We have a formal character \( \text{ch}_V \)
for any finite-dimensional $g$-module $V = V(\lambda_1) \oplus \cdots \oplus V(\lambda_\ell)$, $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_\ell \in \Lambda^+_g$ defined by

$$\text{ch}_V := \sum_{i=1}^\ell \text{ch}_{\lambda_i}.$$  

The important point is that $V$ (i.e. its irreducible constituents) can be recovered from the formal character $\text{ch}_V$, meaning that in $\mathbb{Z}[\Lambda_g]$ we can write $\text{ch}_V$ uniquely as a $\mathbb{Z}$-linear combination of characters corresponding to dominant weights $\lambda \in \Lambda^+_g$.

We go back to the case $l = 1, n = 3$. We have $\mathfrak{h} = \mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C} = \mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}$. The character $\text{ch}_{V(a)}$ of the irreducible $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module $V(a) := V(a\omega_1)$ is not hard: The weights of $V(a)$ are

$$-a\omega_1, (-a + 2)\omega_1, \ldots, (a - 2)\omega_1, a\omega_1$$

(all multiplicities are 1). It remains to understand the weights and their multiplicities in the irreducible $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{sl}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module $V(a,b) := V(a\pi_1 + b\pi_2)$. In fact noting that $\pi_1$ restricted to the diagonal torus of $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$ above is $2\omega_1$, and the restriction of $\pi_2$ is 0, we see that, once we know the formal character of $V(a,b)$ as $\mathfrak{sl}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module, we simply substitute $2\omega_1$ for $\pi_1$ and 0 for $\pi_2$ in the result and obtain in this way the formal character of the $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module $V(a,b)$, and hence its decomposition into irreducible constituents as $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module.

Let us assume $a \geq b$ (otherwise pass to the dual representation); we describe the weights and their multiplicities of the $\mathfrak{sl}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module $V(a,b)$ following [Fu-Ha], p. 175ff.: Imagine a plane with a chosen origin from which we draw two vectors of unit length, representing $\pi_1$ and $\pi_2$, such that the angle measured counterclockwise from $\pi_1$ to $\pi_2$ is 60°. Thus the points of the lattice spanned by $\pi_1, \pi_2$ are the vertices of a set of equilateral congruent triangles which gives a tiling of the plane.

The weights of $V(a,b)$ are the lattice points which lie on the edges of a sequence of $b$ (not necessarily regular) hexagons $H_i$ with vertices at lattice points, $i = 0, \ldots, b - 1$, and a sequence of $[(a - b)/3] + 1$ triangles $T_j$, $j = 0, \ldots, [(a - b)/3]$. The $H_i$ and $T_j$ are concentric around the origin, and $H_i$ has one vertex at $(a - i)\pi_1 + (b - i)\pi_2$. $T_j$ has one vertex at the point $(a - b - 3j)\pi_1$, and $H_i$ and $T_j$ are otherwise determined by the condition that the lines through $\pi_1, \pi_2, \pi_2 - \pi_1$ are axes of symmetry for them, i.e. they are
preserved by the reflections in these lines (one should make a picture now). The multiplicities of the weights obtained in this way are as follows: Weights lying on $H_i$ have multiplicity $i + 1$, and weights lying on one of the $T_j$ have multiplicity $b$. This completely determines the formal character of $V(a, b)$. Let us look at $V(2, 2)$ for example. Here we get three concentric regular hexagons (one of them is degenerate and consists of the origin alone). The weights are thus:

$$2\pi_1 + 2\pi_2, 3\pi_2, -2\pi_1 + 4\pi_2, -3\pi_1 + 3\pi_2, -4\pi_1 + 2\pi_2, -3\pi_1,$$

$$-2\pi_1 - 2\pi_2, -3\pi_2, 2\pi_1 - 4\pi_2, 3\pi_1 - 3\pi_2, 4\pi_1 - 2\pi_2, 3\pi_1$$

(these are the ones on the outer hexagon, read counterclockwise, and have multiplicity one),

$$\pi_1 + \pi_2, -\pi_1 + 2\pi_2, -2\pi_1 + \pi_2, -\pi_1 - \pi_2, \pi_1 - 2\pi_2, 2\pi_1 - \pi_2$$

(these lie on the middle hexagon and have multiplicity two), and finally there is $0$ with multiplicity 3 corresponding to the origin. Consequently, the formal character of $V(2, 2)$ as a representation of $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$ is

$$e(-8\omega_1) + 2e(-6\omega_1) + 4e(-4\omega_1) + 4e(-2\omega_1) + 5e(0\omega_1),$$

$$+ 4e(2\omega_1) + 4e(4\omega_1) + 2e(6\omega_1) + e(8\omega_1)$$

which is equal to $\text{ch}_{V(8)} + \text{ch}_{V(6)} + 2\text{ch}_{V(4)} + \text{ch}_{V(0)}$. This proves (12), and (13), (14) and (15) are similar.

We resume the discussion of the main content of subsection 2.4. Before stating the main theorem, we collect some preliminary facts in the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.2.4.2.** (1) The following decomposition of $L \subset V(2, 2)$ as $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$-subspace of $V(2, 2)$ holds (possibly after interchanging the roles of $V(2, 2)_4$ and $V(2, 2)_4'$):

$$L = V(2, 2)_8 \oplus V(2, 2)_4 \oplus V(2, 2)_0.$$

(2) The map $\epsilon(\cdot, h_0) : V(0, 4) \to V(2, 2)$ is an $\mathfrak{so}_3$-equivariant isomorphism onto $L$.

(3) Putting $Y := \epsilon(\cdot, h_0)^{-1}(Z) \subset V(0, 4)$, we have $h_0^2 \in Y$. 
(4) One has $\Gamma(V(0, 4)) \subset V(1, 1)_4 \subset V(1, 1)$, and the inclusion $Y \subset \Gamma^{-1}(0)$ holds.

Proof. (1): Using the explicit form of $\Phi$ one calculates that the dimension of the image of the $\SO_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant map $\Phi(\cdot, h_0) : V(2, 2) \to V(2, 1)$ is 12. Thus, in view of the decomposition (13) of $V(2, 1)$ as $\SO_3 \mathbb{C}$-representation, we must have $\Phi(V(2, 2), h_0) = V(2, 1)_6 \oplus V(2, 1)_4$. Since

$$\dim V(a, b) = \frac{1}{2}(a + 1)(b + 1)(a + b + 2),$$

(3.16)

the dimension of $V(2, 2)$ is 27 and the kernel $L$ of $\Phi(\cdot, h_0)$ has dimension 15; in fact, $V(2, 2)_8$, $V(2, 2)_9$ and (after possibly exchanging $V(2, 2)_4$ and $V(2, 2)_4'$) $V(2, 2)_4'$ must all be in the kernel, since these representations do not appear in the decomposition of the image.

(2): Using the explicit form of $\epsilon$ given in Appendix A (66), one calculates that the dimension of the image of $\epsilon(\cdot, h_0)$ is 15 whence this linear map is injective. Moreover, its image is contained in $L$, hence equals $L$, because the map $V(0, 4) \times V(0, 2) \to V(2, 1)$ given by $(f, g) \mapsto \Phi(\epsilon(f, g), g)$ is identically zero since there is no $V(2, 1)$ in the decomposition of $V(0, 4) \otimes \Sym^2 V(0, 2)$.

(3): As we saw in theorem 2.3.3 (1), $\mathbb{C}h^2_0 \in X$, and we have $0 \neq \Psi(h^2_0) \in Z$. From the decomposition (12), we get, $\Psi(h^2_0)$ being invariant, $\langle \Psi(h^2_0) \rangle_{\mathbb{C}} = L^{\SO_3 \mathbb{C}}$. By the decomposition (15), we get that the preimage under $\epsilon(\cdot, h_0)$ of $\Psi(h^2_0)$ spans the $\SO_3 \mathbb{C}$-invariants $V(0, 4)_0$ which are thus in $Y$. So in particular, $h^2_0 \in Y$.

(4): The first part is straightforward: Just decompose $\Sym^2 V(0, 4)$ as $\SO_3 \mathbb{C}$-module by the methods explained above, and check that it does not contain any $\SO_3 \mathbb{C}$-submodule the highest weight of which has numerical label 2 (this suffices by (14)). The second statement of (4) follows from the observation that the map $\tilde{\gamma} : V(0, 4) \times V(0, 2) \to V(1, 1)$ (Def. 2.4.1 (4)) factors:

$$c \cdot \tilde{\gamma} = \gamma \circ \epsilon, \ c \in \mathbb{C}^\times,$$

where $\gamma : V(2, 2) \to V(1, 1)$ is the unique (up to nonzero scalar) nontrivial $\SL_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant map which is homogeneous of degree 2. This is because $V(1, 1)$ occurs in the decomposition of $\Sym^2 V(0, 4) \otimes \Sym^2 V(0, 2)$ with multiplicity one, and $\tilde{\gamma} \circ \epsilon$ is not identically zero, as follows from the explicit form of these maps (cf. Appendix A, (66), (68)). Thus, defining $\tilde{\Gamma} : V(0, 4) \to V(1, 1)$ by $\tilde{\Gamma}(\cdot) := (\gamma \circ \epsilon)(\cdot, h_0)$ (which thus differs from $\Gamma$ just by a nonzero scalar), we must show $\tilde{\Gamma}(Y) = 0$. But recalling the definitions
of $Y$, $\tilde{\Gamma}$ and $Z$ (Def. 2.4.1 (1)), it suffices to show that $\tilde{\gamma} \circ \Psi$ is identically zero; the latter is true since it is an $\operatorname{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant map from $V(0,4)$ to $V(1,1)$, homogeneous of degree 6, but $\operatorname{Sym}^6 V(0,4)$ does not contain $V(1,1)$. This proves (4).

Let us now pass from $\operatorname{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$ to the $\operatorname{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}$-picture and denote by $V(d)$ the space of binary forms of degree $d$ in the variables $z_1$, $z_2$. This is of course consistent with our previous notation since, under the isomorphism $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C} \simeq \mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}$, $V(d)$ is just the irreducible $\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$-module the highest weight of which has numerical label $d$; since we consider $\operatorname{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}$-representations, $d$ is always even.

We will fix a covering $\operatorname{SL}_2 \mathbb{C} \to \operatorname{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$ and thus an isomorphism $\operatorname{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \simeq \operatorname{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$, and we will fix isomorphisms $\delta_1 : V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8) \to V(0,4)$ and $\delta_2 : V(4) \to V(1,1)_4$ such that $(1,0,0)$ maps to $h_0^2$ under $\delta_1$ and both $\delta_1$ and $\delta_2$ are equivariant with respect to the isomorphism $\operatorname{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \simeq \operatorname{SO}_3 \mathbb{C}$; we will discuss in a moment how this is done, but for now this is not important.

Look at the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
Y \subset \Gamma^{-1}(0) \subset V(0,4) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8) \\
\delta_1 & & \delta_2 \\
\Gamma |_{\Gamma^{-1}(0)} & \cong & V(4) \\
0 \in V(1,1)_4 & \xrightarrow{\cong} & V(1,1) \simeq V(1,1)_4 \oplus V(1,1)_2
\end{array}
$$

By part (4) of lemma 2.4.2, we have $\delta^{-1}(0) \supset U$, and by part (3) of the same lemma, $(1,0,0) \in U$. Moreover, recalling our construction of $X$ in theorem 2.3.3, we see that $\dim X = \dim \mathbb{P} V(0,4) - \dim \mathbb{P} V(0,2) = 14 - 5 = 9$, whence, chosing through the definitions of $Z$, $Y$, $U$, we get $\dim U = 10$. But the explicit form of $\delta$ (we will see this in a moment) allows us to conclude, by explicit calculation of the rank of the differential of $\delta$ at the invariant point $(1,0,0)$, that $\dim T_{(1,0,0)} U = 10$, whence $T_{(1,0,0)} U = V(0) \oplus V(8)$. Therefore, as $U$ is irreducible, it is the unique component of the (possibly reducible)
variety $\delta^{-1}(0)$ passing through $(1, 0, 0)$. Moreover, it is clear the condition 
$\{\delta = 0\}$ amounts to 5 quadratic equations! We have proven

**Theorem 3.2.4.3.** There is an isomorphism

$$
\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} V(0, 4)^{SL_3 \mathbb{C}} \simeq \mathbb{C}(U)^{PSL_2 \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{C}^*}
$$

(3.17)

where

$$
\delta : V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8) \rightarrow V(4)
$$

is $PSL_2$-equivariant and homogeneous of degree 2, and $U$ is the unique irreducible component of $\delta^{-1}(0)$ passing through $(1, 0, 0)$. Moreover, dim $U = 10$ and $T_{(1,0,0)} U = V(0) \oplus V(8)$.

We close this section by describing the explicit form of the covering $SL_2 \mathbb{C} \rightarrow SO_3 \mathbb{C}$ and the maps $\delta_1$, $\delta_2$, and by making some remarks on transvectants and the final formula for the map $\delta$.

Let $e_1$, $e_2$, $e_3$ be the standard basis in $\mathbb{C}^3$, and denote by $x_1$, $x_2$, $x_3$ the dual basis in $(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$. In this notation, $h_0^2 = x_1 x_3 - x_2^2$. We may view the $x$’s as coordinates on $\mathbb{C}^3$ and identify $\mathbb{C}^3$ with the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}$ by assigning to $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$ the matrix

$$
X = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 & -x_1 \\ x_3 & -x_2 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}.
$$

Consider the adjoint representation $Ad$ of $SL_2 \mathbb{C}$ on $\mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}$. Clearly, for $X \in \mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C}$, $A \in SL_2 \mathbb{C}$, the map $Ad(A) : X \mapsto AXA^{-1}$ preserves the determinant of $X$, which is just our $h_0$; the kernel of $Ad$ is the center $\{\pm 1\}$ of $SL_2 \mathbb{C}$, and since $SL_2 \mathbb{C}$ is connected, the image of $Ad$ is $SO_3 \mathbb{C}$. This is how we fix the isomorphism $PSL_2 \mathbb{C} \simeq SO_3 \mathbb{C}$ explicitly, and how we view $SO_3 \mathbb{C}$ as a subgroup of $SL_3 \mathbb{C}$. Note that the induced isomorphism $\mathfrak{sl}_2 \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}$ on the Lie algebra level can be described as follows:

$$
e := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},
$$

$$
f := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix},
$$

$$
h := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(3.18)
3.2. A REMARKABLE \((\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}, \text{SO}_3 \mathbb{C})\)-SECTION

(where we view \(\mathfrak{so}_3 \mathbb{C}\) as a subalgebra of \(\mathfrak{sl}_3 \mathbb{C}\) in a way consistent with the inclusion on the group level described above). For example,

\[
\text{ad} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) (X) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_2 & -x_1 \\ x_3 & -x_2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x_2 & -x_1 \\ x_3 & -x_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_3 & -2x_1 \\ 0 & -x_3 \end{pmatrix},
\]

so

\[
\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix}.
\]

To give the isomorphism \(\delta_1 : V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8) \to V(0, 4)\) explicitly, we just have to find highest weight vectors inside \(V(0), V(4), V(8)\) and corresponding highest weight vectors inside \(V(0, 4)\). For example, \(h\) acts on \(z^4_2 \in V(4)\) by multiplication by 4, and \(z^4_2\) is killed by \(e\), so this is a highest weight vector inside \(V(4)\). But if we compute

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{h} \cdot (x_1 x_3^4 - x_2 x_3^2) &= (\text{h} \cdot x_1) x_3^4 + 3 x_1 (\text{h} \cdot x_3) x_3^2 - 2 (\text{h} \cdot x_2) x_2 x_3^2 \\
-2x_2^3 (\text{h} \cdot x_3) x_3 &= (-2x_1) x_3^4 + 3 x_1 (2x_3) x_3^2 - 2 \cdot 0 \cdot x_2 x_3^2 \\
-2x_2^3 (2x_3) x_3 &= 4 (x_1 x_3^3 - x_2 x_3^2)
\end{align*}
\]

and

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{e} \cdot (x_1 x_3^4 - x_2 x_3^2) &= (\text{e} \cdot x_1) x_3^4 + 3 x_1 (\text{e} \cdot x_3) x_3^2 - 2 (\text{e} \cdot x_2) x_2 x_3^2 \\
-2x_2^3 (\text{e} \cdot x_3) x_3 &= (-2x_2) \cdot x_3^4 + 3 x_1 \cdot 0 \cdot x_3^2 - 2 (\text{e} \cdot x_3) x_2 x_3^2 \\
-2x_2^3 \cdot 0 \cdot x_3 &= 0
\end{align*}
\]

(use (18) and remark that the \(x\)'s are dual variables, so we have to use the dual action), then we find that a corresponding highest weight vector for the submodule of \(V(0, 4)\) isomorphic to \(V(4)\) is \(x_1 x_3^4 - x_2^2 x_3^2\). Proceeding in this way, we see that we can define \(\delta_1\) uniquely by the requirements:

\[
\delta_1 : 1 \mapsto h_0^2, \quad z^4_2 \mapsto x_1 x_3^3 - x_2^2 x_3^2, \quad z^8_2 \mapsto x_3^4,
\]

and using the Lie algebra action and linearity, we can compute the values of \(\delta_1\) on a set of basis vectors in \(V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8)\).

To write down \(\delta_2\) explicitly, remark that \(V(1, 1)\) may be viewed as the \(\text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\)-submodule of \(\mathbb{C}^3 \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\) consisting of those tensors that are annihilated by

\[
\Delta := \frac{\partial}{\partial e_1} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial}{\partial e_2} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial e_3} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3}.
\]
We take again our highest weight vector $z_2^4 \in V(4)$, and all we have to do is to find a vector in $\mathbb{C}^3 \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ on which $\hbar$ acts by multiplication by 4 and which is annihilated by $e$ and $\Delta$. Indeed, $e_1 x_3$ is one such. Thus we define $\delta_2$ by

$$\delta_2 : z_2^4 \mapsto e_1 x_3.$$  

Then it is easy to compute the values of $\delta_2$ on basis elements of $V(4)$ in the same way as for $\delta_1$. Let us recall the classical notion of transvectants (“Überschiebung” in German). Let $d_1, d_2, n$ be nonnegative integers such that $0 \leq n \leq \min(d_1, d_2)$. For $f \in V(d_1)$ and $g \in V(d_2)$ one puts

$$\psi_n(f, g) := \frac{(d_1 - n)! (d_2 - n)!}{d_1! d_2!} \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i \binom{n}{i} \frac{\partial^n f}{\partial z_1^{n-i} \partial z_2^i} \frac{\partial^n g}{\partial z_1^i \partial z_2^{n-i}}$$ (3.20)

(cf. [B-S], p. 122). The map $(f, g) \mapsto \psi_n(f, g)$ is a bilinear and $\text{SL}_2 \mathbb{C}$-equivariant map from $V(d_1) \times V(d_2)$ onto $V(d_1 + d_2 - 2n)$. The map

$$V(d_1) \otimes V(d_2) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\min(d_1, d_2)} V(d_1 + d_2 - 2n)$$

$$(f, g) \mapsto \sum_{n=0}^{\min(d_1, d_2)} \psi_n(f, g)$$

is an isomorphism of $\text{SL}_2 \mathbb{C}$-modules (“Clebsch-Gordan decomposition”). Thus transvectants make the decomposition of $V(d_1) \otimes V(d_2)$ into irreducibles explicit.

The explicit form of $\delta$ that results from the computations is then

$$\delta(f_0, f_4, f_8) = -\frac{6}{1225} \psi_6(f_8, f_8) + \frac{1}{840} \psi_4(f_8, f_4)$$ (3.21)

$$+ \frac{11}{54} \psi_2(f_4, f_4) - \frac{7}{36} f_4 f_0,$$

where $(f_0, f_4, f_8) \in V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8)$. Note that the fact that $\delta$ turns out to be such a linear combination of transvectants is no surprise in view of the Clebsch-Gordan decomposition: In fact, $\delta$ may be viewed as a map

$$\delta' : (V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8)) \otimes (V(0) \oplus V(4) \oplus V(8)) \rightarrow V(4)$$
and using the fact that \( \delta \) is symmetric and collecting only those tensor products in the preceding formula for which \( V(4) \) is a subrepresentation, we see that \( \delta \) comes from a map

\[
\delta'' : (V(0) \otimes V(4)) \oplus (V(4) \otimes V(4)) \\
\oplus (V(8) \otimes V(4)) \oplus (V(8) \otimes V(8)) \rightarrow V(4). 
\]

Thus it is clear from the beginning that \( \delta \) will be a linear combination of \( \psi_6, \psi_4, \psi_2, \psi_0 \) as in formula (21), and the actual coefficients are easily calculated once we know \( \delta \) explicitly!

In fact, the next lemma shows that the actual coefficients of the transvectants \(\psi_i\)'s occurring in \( \delta \) are not very important.

**Lemma 3.2.4.4.** For \( \lambda := (\lambda_0, \lambda_2, \lambda_4, \lambda_6) \in \mathbb{C}^4 \) consider the homogeneous of degree 2 \( \text{PSL}_2 \)-equivariant map

\[
\delta_\lambda : V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4) \rightarrow V(4) \\
f_8 + f_0 + f_4 \mapsto \lambda_6 \psi_6(f_8, f_8) + 2\lambda_4 \psi_4(f_8, f_4) + \lambda_2 \psi_2(f_4, f_4) + 2\lambda_0 f_4 f_0.
\]

Suppose that \( \lambda_0 \neq 0 \). Then:

1. One has \( 1 \in \delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \) and \( T_1 \delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) = V(8) \oplus V(0) \); thus there is a unique irreducible component \( U_\lambda \) of \( \delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \) passing through 1 on which 1 is a smooth point.

2. If furthermore \( \lambda \in (\mathbb{C}^*)^4 \), then \( \mathbb{P}U_\lambda \) is \( \text{PSL}_2 \)-equivariantly isomorphic to \( \mathbb{P}U_{(1,0,1,6)} \) for some \( \epsilon \neq 0 \) (depending on \( \lambda \)).

**Proof.** Part (1) is a straightforward calculation, and for part (2) we choose complex numbers \( \mu_0, \mu_4, \mu_8 \) with the properties \( 6\mu_8^2 = \lambda_6, \mu_4\mu_8 = \lambda_4, \mu_0\mu_4 = \lambda_0, \) and compute \( \epsilon \) from \( 6\epsilon \mu_4^2 = \lambda_2 \). Then the map from \( \mathbb{P}U_\lambda \) to \( \mathbb{P}U_{(1,0,1,6)} \) given by sending \([f_0 + f_4 + f_8] \) to \([\mu_0 f_0 + \mu_4 f_4 + \mu_8 f_8] \) gives the desired isomorphism. \( \square \)

In the next section we will see that for any \( \epsilon \neq 0 \), the \( \text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \)-quotient of \( \mathbb{P}U_{(1,0,1,6)} \) is rational, and so the same holds for \( \mathbb{P}U_\lambda \) for any \( \lambda \in (\mathbb{C}^*)^4 \); note however that the reduction step in lemma 2.4.4 (2) just simplifies the subsequent calculations, but is otherwise not substantial.
3.3 Further sections and inner projections

3.3.1 Binary quartics again and a \((\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}, \mathfrak{S}_4)\)-section

All the subsequent constructions and calculations depend very much on the geometry of the \(\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}\)-action on the module \(V(4)\). In fact, the first main point in the proof that \(\mathbb{P}U_3/\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}\) is rational will be the construction of a \((\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}, \mathfrak{S}_4)\)-section of this variety (\(\mathfrak{S}_4\) being the group of permutations of 4 elements); this is done by using proposition 2.1.2 (2) for the projection of \(V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)\) to \(V(4)\) and producing such a section for \(V(4)\) via the concept of \(\text{stabilizer in general position}\) which we recall next.

**Definition 3.3.1.1.** Let \(G\) be a linear algebraic group \(G\) acting on an irreducible variety \(X\). A stabilizer in general position (s.g.p.) for the action of \(G\) on \(X\) is a subgroup \(H\) of \(G\) such that the stabilizer of a general point in \(X\) is conjugate to \(H\) in \(G\).

An s.g.p. (if it exists) is well-defined to within conjugacy, but it need not exist in general; however, for the action of a reductive group \(G\) on an irreducible smooth affine variety, an s.g.p. always exists by results of Richardson and Luna (cf. [Po-Vi], §7).

**Proposition 3.3.1.2.** For the action of \(\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}\) on \(V(4)\), an s.g.p. is given by the subgroup \(H\) generated by

\[
\omega := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \rho := \begin{bmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{bmatrix}.
\]

\(H\) is isomorphic to the Klein four-group \(\mathfrak{V}_4 \cong \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}\) and its normalizer \(N(H)\) in \(\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}\) is isomorphic to \(\mathfrak{S}_4\); one has \(N(H)/H \cong \mathfrak{S}_3\).

More explicitly, \(N(H) = \langle \tau, \sigma \rangle\), where, putting \(\theta := \exp(2\pi i/8)\), one has

\[
\tau := \begin{bmatrix} \theta^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & \theta \end{bmatrix}, \quad \sigma := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \theta^2 \\ \theta^5 & \theta^3 \end{bmatrix}.
\]

**Proof.** We will give a geometric proof due to Bogomolov ([Bogo2], p.18). A general homogeneous degree 4 binary form \(f \in V(4)\) determines a set of 4 points \(\Sigma \subset \mathbb{P}^1\); the double cover of \(\mathbb{P}^1\) with branch points \(\Sigma\) is an elliptic curve; it is acted on by its subgroup of 2-torsion points \(H_f \cong \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}\), and this action commutes with the sheet exchange map, hence descends to an
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS

action of $H_f$ on $\mathbb{P}^1$ which preserves the point set $\Sigma$ and thus the polynomial $f$; in general $H_f$ will be the full automorphism group of the point set $\Sigma$ since a general elliptic curve does not have complex multiplication.

Let us see that $H_f$ is conjugate to $H$: $H_f$ is generated by two commuting reflections $\gamma_1, \gamma_2$ acting on the Riemann sphere $\mathbb{P}^1$ (with two fixed points each). By applying a suitable projectivity, we see that $H_f$ is conjugate to $\langle \omega, \gamma'_2 \rangle$ where $\gamma'_2$ is another reflection commuting with $\omega$; thus $\omega$ interchanges the fixed points of $\gamma'_2$ and also the fixed points of $\rho$. Thus if we change coordinates via a suitable dilation (a projectivity preserving the fixed points of $\omega$), $\gamma'_2$ goes over to $\rho$, and thus $H_f$ is conjugate to $H$.

One computes that $\sigma$ and $\tau$ normalize $H$; in fact, $\sigma^{-1} \omega \sigma = \rho$, $\sigma^{-1} \rho \sigma = \omega \rho$, and $\tau^{-1} \omega \tau = \omega \rho$, $\tau^{-1} \rho \tau = \rho$. Moreover, $\tau$ has order 4 and $\sigma$ order 3, $(\tau \sigma)^2 = 1$, thus one has the relations

$$\tau^4 = \sigma^3 = (\tau \sigma)^2 = 1.$$ 

It is known that $\mathfrak{S}_4$ is the group on generators $R$, $S$ with relations $R^4 = S^2 = (RS)^3 = 1$; mapping $R \mapsto \tau^{-1}$, $S \mapsto \tau \sigma$, we see that the group $\langle \tau, \sigma \rangle < N(H)$ is a quotient of $\mathfrak{S}_4$; since $\langle \tau, \sigma \rangle$ contains elements of order 4 and order 3, its order is at least 12, but since there are no normal subgroups of order 2 in $\mathfrak{S}_4$, $\mathfrak{S}_4 = \langle \tau, \sigma \rangle$. To finish the proof, it therefore suffices to note that the order of $N(H)$ is at most 24: For this one just has to show that the centralizer of $H$ in $\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}$ is just $H$, for then $N(H)/H$ is a subgroup of the group of permutations of the three nontrivial elements $H - \{1\}$ in $H$ (in fact equal to it). Elements in $\text{PGL}_2 \mathbb{C}$ commuting with $\omega$ must be of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & -a \end{pmatrix},$$

and if these commute also with $\rho$, the elements $1$, $\omega$, $\rho$, $\omega \rho$ are the only possibilities. 

\[\square\]

**Corollary 3.3.1.3.** *The variety $(V(4)^H)^0 \subset V(4)$ consisting of those points whose stabilizer in $\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}$ is exactly $H$ is a $(\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C}, N(H))$-section of $V(4)$.*

**Proof.** The fact that the orbit $\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \cdot (V(4)^H)^0$ is dense in $V(4)$ follows since a general point in $V(4)$ has stabilizer conjugate to $H$; the assertion $\forall g \in \text{PGL}_2 \mathbb{C}, \forall x \in (V(4)^H)^0 : gx \in (V(4)^H)^0 \implies g \in N(H)$ is clear by definition. 

\[\square\]
Let us recall the representation theory of \(N(H) = \mathfrak{S}_4\) viewed as the group of permutations of four letters \(\{a, b, c, d\}\); the character table is as follows (cf. [Se]).

\[
\begin{array}{c|cccc}
\chi & 1 & (ab) & (ab)(cd) & (abc)(abcd) \\
\hline
\chi_0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
\epsilon & 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\
\theta & 2 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\
\psi & 3 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\
\epsilon \psi & 3 & -1 & -1 & 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

\(V_{\chi_0}\) is the trivial 1-dimensional representation, \(V_{\epsilon}\) is the 1-dimensional representation where \(\epsilon(g)\) is the sign of the permutation \(g\); \(\mathfrak{S}_4 = N(H)\) being the semidirect product of \(N(H)/H = \mathfrak{S}_3\) by the normal subgroup \(H\), \(V_\theta\) is the irreducible two-dimensional representation induced from the representation of \(\mathfrak{S}_3\) acting on the elements of \(\mathbb{C}^3\) which satisfy \(x + y + z = 0\) by permutation of coordinates. \(V_\psi\) is the extension to \(\mathbb{C}^3\) of the natural representation of \(\mathfrak{S}_4\) on \(\mathbb{R}^3\) as the group of rigid motions stabilizing a regular tetrahedron; finally, \(V_{\epsilon \psi} = V_{\epsilon} \otimes V_{\psi}\).

We want to decompose \(V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)\) as \(N(H)\)-module; we fix the notation:

\[
a_0 := 1; \quad a_1 := z_1^4 + z_2^4, \quad a_2 := 6z_1^2z_2^2, \quad a_3 := z_1^4 - z_2^4, \quad (3.22) \\
a_4 := 4(z_1^3z_2 - z_1z_2^3), \quad a_5 := 4(z_1^3z_2 + z_1z_2^3); \\
e_1 := 28(z_1^6z_2 - z_1^2z_2^5), \quad e_2 := 56(z_1^7z_2 + z_1^5z_2^3 - z_1^3z_2^5 - z_1z_2^7), \\
e_3 := 56(z_1^7z_2 - z_1^5z_2^3 - z_1^3z_2^5 + z_1z_2^7), \quad e_4 := z_1^8 - z_2^8 \\
e_5 := 8(z_1^7z_2 - 7z_1^5z_2^3 + 7z_1^3z_2^5 - z_1z_2^7), \\
e_6 := 8(z_1^7z_2 + 7z_1^5z_2^3 + 7z_1^3z_2^5 + z_1z_2^7), \\
e_7 := z_1^8 + z_2^8, \quad e_8 := 28(z_1^6z_2^2 + z_1^2z_2^6), \quad e_9 := 70z_1^4z_2^4. \\
\]

**Lemma 3.3.1.4.** One has the following decompositions as \(N(H)\)-modules:

\[
V(0) = V_{\chi_0}, \quad V(4) = V_\psi \oplus V_\theta, \quad V(8) = V_{\epsilon \psi} \oplus V_\psi \oplus V_\theta \oplus V_{\chi_0}. \quad (3.23)
\]

More explicitly,

\[
V(0) = \langle a_0 \rangle, \quad V(4) = \langle a_3, a_4, a_5 \rangle \oplus \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle, \quad (3.24) \\
V(8) = \langle e_4, e_5, e_6 \rangle \oplus \langle e_1, e_2, e_3 \rangle \oplus \langle e_8, 7e_7 - e_9 \rangle \oplus \langle 5e_7 + e_9 \rangle.
\]
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS

Here \( \langle e_4, e_5, e_6 \rangle \) corresponds to \( V_{\epsilon^4} \) and \( \langle e_1, e_2, e_3 \rangle \) corresponds to \( V_{\psi} \). Moreover,

\[
V(0)^H = \langle a_0 \rangle, \quad V(4)^H = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle, \quad V(8)^H = \langle e_7, e_8, e_9 \rangle.
\] (3.25)

Proof. We will prove (25) first; one observes that quite generally for \( k \geq 0 \),

\[
V(2k)^H = (V(2k)^{\rho})^{\omega} \quad (\rho \text{ and } \omega \text{ commute}) \quad \text{and that the monomials } z_1^{2k-j},
\]

\( j = 0, \ldots, 2k \), are invariant under \( \rho \) if \( j + k \) is even, and otherwise anti-

invariant, so if \( k = 2s \), \( \dim V(2k)^{\rho} = 2s + 1 \), and if \( k = 2s + 1 \), \( \dim V(2k)^{\rho} = 2s + 1 \). Since \( \omega \) is also a reflection, we have \( 2 \dim(V(2k)^{\rho})^{\omega} - \dim V(2k)^{\rho} = \tr(\omega|V(2k)^{\rho}) \), and the trace is 1 for \( k = 2s \), and \(-1 \) for \( k = 2s + 1 \), thus

\[
\dim V(2k)^H = s + 1, \quad k = 2s, \quad \dim V(2k)^H = s, \quad k = 2s + 1.
\]

In particular, the \( H \)-invariants in \( V(0) \), \( V(4) \), \( V(8) \) have the dimensions as

claimed in (25), and one checks that the elements given there are indeed invariant.

To prove (23), we use the Clebsch-Gordan formula \( V(2k) \otimes V(2) = V(2k + 2) \oplus V(2k) \oplus V(2k - 2) \) (cf. (20)) iteratively together with the fact that the

character of the tensor product of two representations of a finite group is the

product of the characters of each of the factors; since \( V(2) \) has dimension 3 and \( \dim V(2)^H = 0 \), \( V(2) \) is irreducible; the value of the character of the \( N(H) \)-module \( V(2) \) on \( \tau \) is 1, so \( V(2) = V_{\epsilon^4} \). Now \( V(2) \otimes V(2) = V(4) \oplus V(2) \oplus V(0) \), and looking at the character table, one checks that

\[
(\epsilon^4)^2 = \chi_0 + (\epsilon^4) + (\psi) + (\theta).
\]

This proves the decomposition in (23) for \( V(4) \). The decomposition for \( V(8) \)

is proven similarly (one proves \( V(6) = V_{\psi} \oplus V_{\epsilon^4} \oplus V_{\epsilon^5} \) first).

The proof of (24) now amounts to checking that the given spaces are invariant

under \( \sigma \) and \( \tau \); finally note that \( V_{\epsilon^4} \) corresponds to \( \langle e_4, e_5, e_6 \rangle \) since the value of

the character on \( \tau \) is 1.

\( \Box \)

Recall from Lemma 2.4.4 that we want to prove the rationality of \( (\mathbb{P} U_{\lambda})/\text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \) and we can and will always assume in the sequel that \( \lambda = (1, 6, 1, 6) \) for \( \epsilon \neq 0 \). In view of Lemma 3.1.4 it will be convenient for subsequent calculations to write the map \( \delta_{\lambda} : V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4) \to V(4) \) in terms of the

basis \( \langle e_1, \ldots, e_9, a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_5 \rangle \) in the source and the basis \( \langle a_1, \ldots, a_5 \rangle \) in the
target. Denote coordinates in $V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)$ with respect to the chosen basis by $(x_1, \ldots, x_9, s_0, s_1, \ldots, s_5) =: (x, s)$. Then one may write
\[
\delta_\lambda(x, s) = \begin{pmatrix}
Q_1(x, s) \\
\vdots \\
Q_5(x, s)
\end{pmatrix}
\] (3.26)
with $Q_1(x, s), \ldots, Q_5(x, s)$ quadratic in $(x, s)$; their values may be computed using formulas (20), (22), and the definition of $\delta_\lambda$ in Lemma 2.4.4, and they can be found in Appendix B.

**Theorem 3.3.1.5.** Let $\tilde{Q}_\lambda \subset V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)$ be the subvariety defined by the equations $Q_1 = \cdots = Q_5 = 0$, $s_3 = s_4 = s_5 = 0$. There is exactly one 7-dimensional irreducible component $Q_\lambda$ of $\tilde{Q}_\lambda$ passing through the $N(H)$-invariant point $5e_7 + e_9$ in $V(8)$; $Q_\lambda$ is $N(H)$-invariant and
\[
\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} U_\lambda)^{\text{PSL}_2} \simeq \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} Q_\lambda)^{N(H)}.
\] (3.27)

**Proof.** We want to use Proposition 2.1.2, (2).
Note that $5e_7 + e_9 \in U_\lambda$: In fact, $\delta_\lambda$ maps the $N(H)$-invariants in $V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)$ to the $N(H)$-invariants in $V(4)$ which are 0. Since $U_\lambda$ is the unique irreducible component of $\delta^{-1}_\lambda(0)$ passing through $a_0 = 1$, $U_\lambda$ contains the whole plane of invariants $(a_0, 5e_7 + e_9)$.
If we denote by $p : V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4) \to V(4)$ the projection, then $\tilde{Q}_\lambda = p^{-1}(V(4)^H) \cap \delta^{-1}_\lambda(0)$. Clearly, $\tilde{Q}_\lambda$ is $N(H)$-invariant, and one only has to check that $5e_7 + e_9$ is a nonsingular point on it with tangent space of dimension 7 by direct calculation: Then there is a unique 7-dimensional irreducible component $Q_\lambda$ of $\tilde{Q}_\lambda$ passing through $5e_7 + e_9$ which is $N(H)$-invariant (since $5e_7 + e_9$ is an invariant point on it and this point is nonsingular on $\tilde{Q}_\lambda$).
It remains to prove (27): $Q_\lambda$ is an irreducible component of $p^{-1}(V(4)^H) \cap U_\lambda$ and $Q_\lambda^0 = Q_\lambda \cap p^{-1}((V(4)^H)^0)$ is a dense $N(H)$-invariant open subset of $Q_\lambda$ dominating $(V(4)^H)^0$. Thus by Proposition 2.1.1 (2),
\[
\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} U_\lambda)^{\text{PSL}_2} \simeq \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} Q_\lambda^0)^{N(H)} \simeq \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P} Q_\lambda)^{N(H)}.
\]

\[\Box\]

### 3.3.2 Dividing by the action of $H$

Next we would like to "divide out" the action by $H$, so that we are left with an invariant theory problem for the group $N(H)/H = \mathfrak{S}_3$. Look back at the
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS

action of $N(H)$ on $M := \{ s_3 = s_4 = s_5 = 0 \} \subset V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)$ which is explained in formulas (23), (24); we will adopt the notational convention to denote the irreducible $N(H)$-submodule of $V(8)$ isomorphic to $V_\psi$ by $V(8)(\psi)$ and so forth; thus

$$M = V(0)(\chi_0) \oplus V(4)(\theta) \oplus V(8)(\chi_0) \oplus V(8)(\theta) \oplus V(8)(\psi) \oplus V(8)(\epsilon \psi), \quad (3.28)$$

and looking at the character table of $\mathfrak{S}_4$, we see that the action of $H$ is nontrivial only on $V(8)(\psi) \oplus V(8)(\epsilon \psi) = \langle e_1, e_2, e_3 \rangle \oplus \langle e_4, e_5, e_6 \rangle$ where $x_1, x_2, x_3$ and $x_4, x_5, x_6$ are coordinates; in terms of these, we have

$$\langle \omega \rangle (x_1, \ldots, x_6) = (-x_1, x_2, -x_3, -x_4, x_5, -x_6), \quad (3.29)$$

$$\langle \rho \rangle (x_1, \ldots, x_6) = (x_1, -x_2, -x_3, x_4, -x_5, -x_6),$$

$$\langle \omega \rho \rangle (x_1, \ldots, x_6) = (-x_1, -x_2, x_3, -x_4, -x_5, x_6),$$

and

$$\tau (x_1, \ldots, x_6) = (-x_1, -ix_3, -ix_2, x_4, -ix_6, -ix_5), \quad (3.30)$$

$$\sigma (x_1, \ldots, x_6) = \left( 4x_3, -\frac{i}{4} x_1, ix_2, -8x_6, -\frac{i}{8} x_4, -ix_5 \right).$$

Thus we see that the map

$$\mathbb{P}(V(8)(\psi) \oplus V(8)(\epsilon \psi)) - \{ x_1 x_2 x_3 = 0 \} \to R \times \mathbb{P}^2,$$

$$(x_1, \ldots, x_6) \mapsto \left( \left( \frac{x_4}{x_1}, \frac{x_5}{x_2}, \frac{x_6}{x_3} \right), \left( \frac{1}{x_1^2}, \frac{1}{x_2^2}, \frac{1}{x_3^2} \right) \right),$$

where $R = \mathbb{C}^3$, is dominant with fibres $H$-orbits, and furthermore $N(H)$-equivariant for a suitable action of $N(H)$ on $R \times \mathbb{P}^2$: In fact, we will agree to write

$$\left( \frac{1}{x_1^2}, \frac{1}{x_2^2}, \frac{1}{x_3^2} \right) = \left( \frac{x_2 x_3}{x_1}, \frac{x_3 x_1}{x_2}, \frac{x_1 x_2}{x_3} \right) \quad \text{and remark that the subspaces}$$

$$R = \left( \frac{x_4}{x_1}, \frac{x_5}{x_2}, \frac{x_6}{x_3} \right), \quad T := \left( \frac{x_2 x_3}{x_1}, \frac{x_3 x_1}{x_2}, \frac{x_1 x_2}{x_3} \right)$$

of the field of fractions of $\mathbb{C}[V(8)(\psi) \oplus V(8)(\epsilon \psi)]$ are invariant under $\sigma$ and $\tau$ (thus $\mathbb{P}^2 = \mathbb{P}(T)$). If we denote the coordinates with respect to the basis
vectors in \( R \) resp. \( T \) given above by \( r_1, r_2, r_3 \) resp. \( y_1, y_2, y_3 \), then the actions of \( \tau \) and \( \sigma \) are described by

\[
\begin{align*}
\tau(r_1, r_2, r_3) &= (-r_1, r_3, r_2), \\
\sigma(r_1, r_2, r_3) &= (-2r_3, r_1/2, -r_2), \\
\tau(y_1, y_2, y_3) &= (y_1, -y_3, -y_2), \\
\sigma(y_1, y_2, y_3) &= ((1/16)y_3, -16y_1, -y_2).
\end{align*}
\]

Thus the only \( N(H) \)-invariant lines in \( R \) resp. \( T \) are the ones spanned by \((2, 1, -1)\) resp. \((-1, 16, -16)\) on which \( \tau \) acts by multiplication by \(-1\) resp. \(+1\) and hence

\[
R = R(e) \oplus R(\theta), \quad T = T(x_0) \oplus T(\theta).
\]

We see that the morphism

\[
\pi : \mathbb{P}(M) - \{x_1x_2x_3 = 0\} \to R \times \mathbb{P}(T \oplus V(8)_{(x_0)} \oplus V(8)_{(\theta)} \oplus V(0)_{(x_0)} \oplus V(4)_{(\theta)}) \cong R \times \mathbb{P}^8,
\]

\[
\pi(x, s) := \left(\frac{x_4}{x_1}, \frac{x_5}{x_2}, \frac{x_6}{x_3}, \frac{x_2x_3}{x_1}, \frac{x_3x_1}{x_2}, \frac{x_1x_2}{x_3}\right)
\]

is \( N(H) \)-equivariant, dominant, and all fibres are \( H \)-orbits. If we consider \((x_7, x_8, x_9, s_0, s_1, s_2)\) as coordinates in \( V(8)_{(x_0)} \oplus V(8)_{(\theta)} \oplus V(0)_{(x_0)} \oplus V(4)_{(\theta)}\) in the target of the map \( \pi \) (as we do in formula \(32\)) we denote them by \((y_7, y_8, y_9, y_{10}, y_{11}, y_{12})\) to achieve consistency with [Kat96]. How do we get equations which define the image

\[
\pi(\mathbb{P}(\bar{Q}_{\lambda} \cap \{x_1x_2x_3 \neq 0\})) \subset R \times (\mathbb{P}^8 - \{y_1y_2y_3 = 0\})
\]

in \( \mathbb{P}^8 - \{y_1y_2y_3 = 0\} \) from the quadrics \( Q_1(x, s), \ldots, Q_5(x, s) \) in formula \(26\)? We can set \( s_3 = s_4 = s_5 = 0 \) in \( Q_1, \ldots, Q_5 \) to obtain equations \( \bar{Q}_1, \ldots, \bar{Q}_5 \) for \( \mathbb{P}(\bar{Q}_{\lambda}) \) in \( \mathbb{P}(M) \); the point is now that the quantities

\[
\bar{Q}_1, \bar{Q}_2, \bar{Q}_3, \bar{Q}_4, \bar{Q}_5
\]

are \( H \)-invariant (as one sees from the equations in Appendix B). Moreover, the map

\[
\pi : \mathbb{P}(M) - \{x_1x_2x_3 = 0\} \to R \times (\mathbb{P}^8 - \{y_1y_2y_3 = 0\})
\]
is a geometric quotient for the action of $H$ on the source (by [Po-Vi], Thm. 4.2), so we can write

$$\bar{Q}_1 = q_1(r_1, \ldots, y_{12}), \quad \bar{Q}_2 = q_2(r_1, \ldots, y_{12}), \quad \frac{\bar{Q}_3}{x_1} = q_3(r_1, \ldots, y_{12}),$$

$$\frac{\bar{Q}_4}{x_2} = q_4(r_1, \ldots, y_{12}), \quad \frac{\bar{Q}_4}{x_3} = q_5(r_1, \ldots, y_{12})$$

where $q_1, \ldots, q_5$ are polynomials in $(r_1, r_2, r_3), (y_1, y_2, y_3, y_7, \ldots, y_{12})$ which one may find written out in Appendix B. Here we just want to emphasize their structural properties which will be most important for the subsequent arguments:

1. The polynomials $q_1, q_2$ are homogeneous of degree 2 in the set of variables $(y_1, \ldots, y_{12})$; the coefficients of the monomials in the $y$'s are (inhomogeneous) polynomials of degrees $\leq 2$ in $r_1$, $r_2$, $r_3$. For $r_1 = r_2 = r_3 = 0$, $q_1, q_2$ do not vanish identically.

2. The polynomials $q_3, q_4, q_5$ are homogeneous linear in $(y_1, \ldots, y_{12})$; the coefficients of the monomials in the $y$'s are (inhomogeneous) polynomials of degrees $\leq 2$ in $r_1$, $r_2$, $r_3$. For $r_1 = r_2 = r_3 = 0$, $q_3, q_4, q_5$ do not vanish identically.

**Theorem 3.3.2.1.** Let $\bar{Y}_\lambda$ be the subvariety of $R \times \mathbb{P}^8$ defined by the equations $q_1 = q_2 = q_3 = q_4 = q_5 = 0$. There is an irreducible $N(H)$-invariant component $Y_\lambda$ of $\bar{Y}_\lambda$ with $\pi([x^0]) \in Y_\lambda$, where $x^0 := 13i(5e_7 + e_9) + 5(4e_1 - ie_2 + e_3)$, such that

$$\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{P}Q_\lambda)^{N(H)} \simeq \mathbb{C}(Y_\lambda)^{N(H)}.$$  

**Proof.** The variety $Y_\lambda$ will be the closure of the image $\pi(\mathbb{P}Q_\lambda \cap \{x_1x_2x_3 \neq 0\})$ in $R \times \mathbb{P}^8$.

It remains to see that $x^0 \in Q_\lambda$. Recall from Theorem 3.1.5 that $Q_\lambda$ is the unique irreducible component of $\bar{Q}_\lambda$ passing through the $N(H)$-invariant point $5e_7 + e_9$, and that this point is a nonsingular point on $\bar{Q}_\lambda$; thus, if we can find an irreducible subvariety of $\bar{Q}_\lambda$ which contains both $5e_7 + e_9$ and $x^0$, we are done. The sought-for subvariety is $Q_\lambda \cap V(8)^{\sigma}$, where $V(8)^{\sigma}$ are the
elements in $V(8)$ invariant under $\sigma \in N(H)$. One sees that $x^0$ and $5e_7 + e_9$ lie on it, and computing

$$V(8)^\sigma = (5e_7 + e_9, 8e_4 - ie_5 - e_6, 4e_1 - ie_2 + e_3),$$

$$V(4)^\sigma = (2(z_1^4 - z_2^4) + 4(z_1^3z_2 + z_1z_2^3) + 4i(z_1^3z_2 - z_1z_2^3),$$

and using $\delta_\lambda(V(8)^\sigma) \subset V(4)^\sigma$, we find that $\tilde{Q}_\lambda \cap V(8)^\sigma$ is a quadric in $V(8)^\sigma$ which is easily checked to be irreducible.

Thus it remains to prove the rationality of $Y_\lambda/N(H) = Y_\lambda/\mathfrak{S}_3$.

### 3.3.3 Inner projections and the "no-name" method

The variety $\tilde{Y}_\lambda$ comes with the two projections

$$\tilde{Y}_\lambda \xrightarrow{p_{\mathbb{P}^8}} \mathbb{P}^8 \xrightarrow{p_{\mathbb{R}^4}} \mathbb{R}$$

Recall from (32) that $N := \mathbb{P}(V(8)_\theta \oplus V(4)_\theta) \subset \mathbb{P}^8$ is an $N(H)$-invariant 3-dimensional projective subspace of $\mathbb{P}^8$. We will show $\mathbb{C}(Y_\lambda)^{N(H)} \simeq \mathbb{C}(R \times N)^{N(H)}$ via the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.3.3.1.** There is an open $N(H)$-invariant subset $R_0 \subset R$ containing $0 \in R$ with the following properties:

1. For all $r \in R_0$ the fibre $p_{\mathbb{R}^4}^{-1}(r) \subset \tilde{Y}_\lambda$ is irreducible of dimension 3, and $p_{\mathbb{R}^4}^{-1}(R_0)$ is an open $N(H)$-invariant subset of $Y_\lambda$.

2. There exist $N(H)$-sections $\sigma_1$, $\sigma_2$ of the $N(H)$-equivariant projection $R_0 \times \mathbb{P}^8 \to R_0$ such that $N(r) := \langle \sigma_1(r), \sigma_2(r), (1 : 0 : 0 : \cdots : 0), (0 : 1 : 0 : \cdots : 0), (0 : 0 : 1 : 0 : \cdots : 0) \rangle \subset \mathbb{P}^8$, $r \in R_0$, is an $N(H)$-invariant family of 4-dimensional projective subspaces in $\mathbb{P}^8$ with the properties:

   (i) $N(r)$ is disjoint from $N$ for all $r \in R_0$.

   (ii) The fibre $p_{\mathbb{R}^4}(p_{\mathbb{R}^4}^{-1}(r)) \subset \mathbb{P}^8$ contains the line $\langle \sigma_1(r), \sigma_2(r) \rangle \subset N(r)$ for all $r \in R_0$.

   (iii) The projection $\pi_r : \mathbb{P}^8 \to N$ from $N(r)$ to $N$ maps the fibre $p_{\mathbb{R}^4}(p_{\mathbb{R}^4}^{-1}(r)) \subset \mathbb{P}^8$ dominantly onto $N$ for all $r \in R_0$.  

Before turning to the proof, let us note the following corollary.

**Corollary 3.3.3.2.** One has the field isomorphism

\[ \mathbb{C}(Y)\mathbb{N}^{(H)} \simeq \mathbb{C}(R \times N)^{N(H)}, \]

and the latter field is rational. Hence \( \mathcal{M}_3 \) is rational.

**Proof.** (of corollary) The \( N(H) \)-invariant set \( p_R^{-1}(R_0) \) is an open subset of \( Y_\lambda \). Let us see that the projection \( \pi_r : F_r := p_{ps}(p_R^{-1}(r)) \rightarrow N \) is birational. In fact, \( F_r \) is of dimension 3 and irreducible and the intersection of a 3-codimensional linear subspace and two quadrics in \( \mathbb{P}^8 \). Moreover, \( F_r \cap N(r) \) contains a line \( L_r \) by Theorem 3.3.1 (2), (ii). Thus for a general point \( P \) in \( N, F_r \cap (L_r, P) \) consists of \( L_r \) and a single point (namely the point of intersection of the two lines which are the residual intersections of each of the two quadrics defining \( F_r \) with \( (L_r, P) \), the other component being \( L_r \) itself). Thus \( \pi_r \) is generically one-to-one whence birational. Thus one has a birational \( N(H) \)-isomorphism \( p_R^{-1}(R_0) \rightarrow R_0 \times N, \) given by sending \( (r, [y]) \) to \( (r, \pi_r([y])) \). Thus one gets the field isomorphism in Corollary 3.3.2.

By the no-name lemma (cf. e.g. [Dolg1], section 4), \( \mathbb{C}(R \times N)^{N(H)} \simeq \mathbb{C}(N)^{N(H)}(T_1, T_2, T_3) \), where \( T_1, T_2, T_3 \) are indeterminates, thus it suffices to show that the quotient of \( N \) by \( N(H) \) is stably rational of level \( \leq 3 \). This in turn follows from the same lemma, since clearly, if we take the representation of \( \mathcal{S}_3 \) in \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) by permutation of coordinates, the quotient of \( \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^3) \) by \( \mathcal{S}_3 \), a unirational surface, is rational. \( \square \)

**Proof.** (of theorem) The proof will be given in several steps.

**Step 1. (Irreducibility of the fibre over 0)** We have to show that the variety \( p_{ps}(p_R^{-1}(0)) \subset \mathbb{P}^8 \) is irreducible and 3-dimensional. We have explicit equations for it (namely the ones that arise if we substitute \( r_1 = r_2 = r_3 = 0 \) in \( q_1, \ldots, q_5 \), which are thus 3 linear and 2 quadratic equations); the assertions can then be checked with a computer algebra system such as Macaulay 2.

Recall from Theorem 3.2.1 that \( Y_\lambda \) contains \( \pi([x^0]) \). In fact,

\[ \pi([x^0]) = \left( (0, 0, 0), \left( -\frac{5}{4} : 20 : -20 : 65 : 0 : 13 : 0 : 0 : 0 \right) \right), \quad (3.34) \]

as follows from the definition of \( x^0 \) in Theorem 3.2.1 and the definition of \( \pi \) in (32). Thus \( \pi([x^0]) \) lies in the fibre over 0 of \( p_R^{-1} \) and thus, since there
is an open subset around 0 in $R$ over which the fibres are irreducible and 3-dimensional, assertion (1) of Theorem 3.3.1 is established.

**Step 2.** *(Construction of $\sigma_1$)* To obtain $\sigma_1$, we just assign to $r \in R$ the point $(r, \sigma_1(r))$ with $\sigma_1(r) = (0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 1 : 0 : 0)$, i.e. $y_{10} = 1$, the other $y$’s being 0. This always is in the fibre $p_x(p^*_R(r))$ as one sees on substituting in the equations $q_1, \ldots, q_5$. Moreover, this is an $N(H)$-section, since $y_{10}$ is a coordinate in the space $V(0)_{\chi_0}$ in formula (32).

**Step 3.** *(Construction of $\sigma_2$; decomposition of $V := \mathbb{P}(\delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \cap V(8))$)* The construction of a section $\sigma_2$, $\sigma_2(r) = (\sigma_2^{(1)}(r) : \cdots : \sigma_2^{(9)}(r))$, involves a little more work. Let us look back at the construction of $Y_\lambda$ in subsection 3.2 for this, especially the definition of the projection $\pi$ in formula (32), and the decomposition of the linear subspace $M \subset V(8) \oplus V(0) \oplus V(4)$. By definition of $R$, the family of codimension 3 linear subspaces

$$L(r) := \{[(x, s)] \mid x_4 = r_1 x_1, x_5 = r_2 x_2, x_6 = r_3 x_3 \} \subset \mathbb{P}(M), \quad (3.35)$$

$r = (r_1, r_2, r_3) \in R$, is $N(H)$-invariant, i.e. $gL(r) = L(gr)$, for $g \in N(H)$. It is natural to intersect this family with $\mathbb{P}(\delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \cap V(8))$ which, as we will see, has dimension 3 and look for an $H$-orbit $\Omega_r$ in the intersection of $\mathbb{P}(\delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \cap V(8))$ with the open set of $L(r)$ where $x_1 x_2 x_3 \neq 0$. Moreover, we will see that for $r = 0$, the point $[x^0]$ is in this intersection. Thus passing to the quotient we may put

$$(r, \sigma_2(r)) := \pi(\Omega_r) \quad (3.36)$$

to obtain a $\sigma_2$ with the required properties. Indeed, note that we will have $\sigma_2^{(7)}(r) = \sigma_2^{(8)} = \sigma_2^{(9)} = 0$ which ensures that $\sigma_2$ and $\sigma_1$ span a line. Moreover,

$$\sigma_2(0) = \left( -\frac{5}{4} : 20 : -20 : 65 : 0 : 13 : 0 : 0 : 0 \right), \quad (3.37)$$

by formula (34), which allows us to check assertions (2), (i) and (iii) of Theorem 3.3.1, which are open properties on the base $R$, by explicit computation for the fibre over 0. Property (2), (ii) stated in the theorem is clear by construction. Let us now carry out this program. We will start by explicitly decomposing $V := \mathbb{P}(\delta^{-1}_\lambda(0) \cap V(8))$ into irreducible components.

To guess what $V$ might be, note that according to the definition of $\delta_\lambda$ in Lemma 2.4.4, $\delta_\lambda$ vanishes on $f_8 \in V(8)$ if for the transvectant $\psi_6$ one has $\psi_6(f_8, f_8) = 0$; but looking back at the definition of transvectants in formula (20), we see that $\psi_6 : V(8) \times V(8) \rightarrow V(4)$ vanishes if $f_8$ is a linear
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS

combination of \( z_8^1, z_7^1z_2 \) and \( z_1^0z_2^2 \) (since we differentiate at least 3 times with respect to \( z_2 \) in one factor in the summands in formula (20)). Thus \( X_1 := \text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \cdot (z_8^1, z_1^1z_2, z_7^0z_2^2) \), the variety of forms of degree 8 with a six-fold zero, is contained in \( V \), and one computes that the differential of \( \delta_3|_{V(8)} \) in \( z_1^0z_2^2 \) is surjective, so that \( X_1 \) is an irreducible component of \( V \).

The dimension of \( X_1 \) is clearly three. Weyman, in [Wey], Cor. 4, computed the Hilbert function of \( X_{p,g} \), the variety of binary forms of degree \( g \) having a root of multiplicity \( \geq p \) which is

\[
H(X_{p,g}, d) = (dp + 1) \binom{g - p + d}{g - p} - (d(p + 1) - 1) \binom{g - p + d - 1}{g - p - 1}.
\]

For \( d = 6, g = 8 \), the leading term in \( d \) in this expression is \( 3d^3 \), which shows

\[
\deg X_1 = 18.
\]

Moreover, we know already that \( 5e_7 + e_9 \) is in \( V \) from the proof of Theorem 3.1.5; thus set \( X_2 := \text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \cdot (5e_7 + e_9) \). We know that the stabilizer of \( 5e_7 + e_9 \) in \( \text{PSL}_2 \mathbb{C} \) contains \( N(H) \) because \( 5e_7 + e_9 = 5z_1^8 + 5z_2^8 + 70z_1^4z_2^4 \) spans the \( N(H) \)-invariants in \( V(8) \) by Lemma 3.1.4. The claim is that the stabilizer is not larger. An easy way to check this is to use the beautiful theory developed in [Ol], p. 188 ff., using differential invariants and signature curves, which allows the explicit determination of the order of the symmetry group of a complex binary form. More precisely we have (cf. [Ol], Cor. 8.68):

**Theorem 3.3.3.3.** Let \( Q(p) \) be a binary form of degree \( n \) (written in terms of the inhomogeneous coordinate \( p = z_1/z_2 \)) which is not equivalent to a monomial. Then the cardinality \( k \) of the symmetry group of \( Q(p) \) satisfies

\[
k \leq 4n - 8,
\]

provided that \( U \) is not a constant multiple of \( H^2 \), where \( U \) and \( H \) are the following polynomials in \( p \): \( H := (1/2)(Q,Q)^{(2)}, T := (Q,H)^{(1)}, U := (Q,T)^{(1)} \) where, if \( Q_1 \) is a binary form of degree \( n_1 \), and \( Q_2 \) is a binary form of degree \( n_2 \), we put

\[
\begin{align*}
(Q_1, Q_2)^{(1)} &:= n_2Q'_1Q_2 - n_1Q_1Q'_2, \\
(Q_1, Q_2)^{(2)} &:= n_2(n_2 - 1)Q''_1Q_2 - 2(n_2 - 1)(n_1 - 1)Q'_1Q'_2 + n_1(n_1 - 1)Q_1Q''_2.
\end{align*}
\]

(These are certain transvectants).
Applying this result in our case, we find the upper bound $24$ for the symmetry group of $5e_7 + e_9$, which is indeed the order of $N(H) = \mathfrak{S}_4$. $X_2$ is irreducible of dimension 3, and computing that the differential of $\delta_3|_{V(8)}$ is surjective in $5e_7 + e_9$, we get that $X_2$ is another irreducible component of $V$. But let us intersect $X_2$ with the codimension 3 linear subspace in $V(8)$ consisting of forms with zeroes $\zeta_1, \zeta_2, \zeta_3 \in \mathbb{P}^1$; there is a unique projectivity carrying these to three roots of $5e_7 + e_9$, which are all distinct, thus there are $8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6$ such projectivities, and $\deg X_2 \geq (8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6)/|N(H)|$. But one checks easily that $V$ itself has dimension 3 and is the intersection of 5 quadrics in $\mathbb{P}(V(8))$, thus has degree $\leq 32$. Thus we must have

$$\deg X_2 = 14, \quad V = X_1 \cup X_2, \quad \deg V = 32. \quad (3.39)$$

Note also that

$$[x^0] \in X_2 \cap L(0). \quad (3.40)$$

In fact, from the proof of Theorem 3.2.1, we know $[x^0] \in V$, and $[x^0] \in L(0)$ being clear, we just check that $x^0$ has no root of multiplicity $\geq 6$.

**Step 4.** (Construction of $\sigma_2$; intersecting $V$ with a family of linear spaces in $\mathbb{P}(M)$) Let $L^0(r)$ be the open subset of $L(r) \subset \mathbb{P}(M)$ where $x_1x_2x_3 \neq 0$. According to the strategy outlined at the beginning of Step 3, we would like to compute the cardinalities

$$|L^0(r) \cap X_1|, \quad |L^0(r) \cap X_2|,$$

for $r$ varying in a small neighbourhood of 0 in $R$. It is, however, easier from a computational point of view to determine the number of intersection points of $X_1$ resp. $X_2$ with certain boundary components of $L^0(r)$ in $L(r)$ first; the preceding cardinalities will afterwards fall out as the residual quantities needed to have $\deg X_1 = 18$, $\deg X_2 = 14$. Thus let us introduce the following additional strata of $L(r) \setminus L^0(r)$:

$$L_0 := \{(x, s) \mid x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\}, \quad (3.41)$$

$$L_1(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_1 \neq 0, \quad x_4 = r_1x_1, \quad x_2 = x_3 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\},$$

$$L_2(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_2 \neq 0, \quad x_5 = r_2x_2, \quad x_1 = x_3 = x_4 = x_6 = 0\},$$

$$L_3(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_3 \neq 0, \quad x_6 = r_3x_3, \quad x_1 = x_2 = x_4 = x_5 = 0\},$$

$$\tilde{L}_1(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_2x_3 \neq 0, \quad x_5 = r_2x_2, \quad x_6 = r_3x_3, \quad x_1 = x_4 = 0\}$$

$$\tilde{L}_2(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_1x_3 \neq 0, \quad x_4 = r_1x_1, \quad x_6 = r_3x_3, \quad x_2 = x_5 = 0\}$$

$$\tilde{L}_3(r) := \{(x, s) \mid x_1x_2 \neq 0, \quad x_4 = r_1x_1, \quad x_5 = r_2x_2, \quad x_3 = x_6 = 0\}.$$
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS

$L(r)$ is the disjoint union of these and $L^0(r)$. From the equations describing $\delta_\lambda$ one sees that $V$ is defined in $\mathbb{P}(V(8))$ with coordinates $x_1, \ldots, x_9$ by

\begin{align*}
-192x_6^2 - 192x_3x_6 + 384x_3^2 - 192x_5^2 - 192x_2x_5 + 384x_2^2 & \quad (3.42) \\
-12x_1x_4 + 12x_7x_8 + 180x_8x_9 = 0, & \\
64x_6^2 - 192x_3x_6 - 128x_3^2 - 64x_5^2 + 192x_2x_5 + 128x_2^2 & \quad (3.43) \\
-2x_4^2 + 16x_1^2 + 2x_7^2 - 16x_8^2 - 50x_9^2 = 0, & \\
96x_5x_6 - 672x_3x_5 - 672x_2x_6 + 1248x_2x_3 & \quad (3.44) \\
-12x_1x_7 + 12x_4x_8 + 180x_1x_9 = 0, & \\
6x_4x_6 + 42x_3x_4 + 84x_1x_6 + 156x_1x_3 & \quad (3.45) \\
-6x_5x_7 - 42x_2x_7 + 24x_5x_8 - 264x_2x_8 + 30x_5x_9 - 30x_2x_9 = 0, & \\
-6x_4x_5 - 42x_2x_4 + 84x_1x_5 + 156x_1x_2 & \quad (3.46) \\
+6x_6x_7 + 42x_3x_7 + 24x_6x_8 - 264x_3x_8 - 20x_6x_9 + 30x_3x_9 = 0, &
\end{align*}

and thus

\[ \mathcal{L}_i(r) \cap V = \emptyset \quad \forall i = 1, 2, 3 \quad (3.47) \]

for $r$ in a Zariski open neighbourhood of $0 \in R$ (for $\mathcal{L}_1(r)$ consider equation (44) and assume $96r_2r_3 - 672r_2 - 672r_3 + 1248 \neq 0$; for $\mathcal{L}_2(r)$ we see that (45) cannot hold if $6r_1r_3 + 42r_1 + 84r_3 + 156 \neq 0$, and for $\mathcal{L}_3(r)$ equation (46) is impossible provided that $-6r_1r_2 - 42r_1 + 84r_2 + 156 \neq 0$).

Let us consider the intersection $V \cap L_0$. We have to solve the equations

\[ 12x_7x_8 + 180x_8x_9 = 0, \quad 2x_7^2 - 16x_8^2 - 50x_9^2 = 0, \]

which have the four distinct solutions $(x_7, x_8, x_9) = (5, 0, \pm 1), (x_7, x_8, x_9) = (15, \pm 5, -1)$, whence

\[ L_0 \cap V = \{[5e_7 \pm e_9], [15e_7 \pm 5e_8 - e_9]\}. \quad (3.48) \]

We will also have to determine the intersection $V \cap L_1(r)$ explicitly. We have to solve the equations

\begin{align*}
-12r_1x_1^2 + 12x_7x_8 + 180x_8x_9 = 0, & \\
-2r_1^2x_1^2 + 16x_1^2 + 2x_7^2 - 16x_8^2 - 50x_9^2 = 0, & \\
-12x_1x_7 + 12r_1x_1x_8 + 180x_1x_9 = 0, &
\end{align*}
in the variables $x_1, x_7, x_8, x_9$. We can check (e.g. with Macaulay 2) that
the subscheme they define has dimension 0 (and degree 8) for $r_1 = 0$. We
already know four solutions with $x_1 = 0$, namely the ones given in formula
(48). Then it suffices to check that

$$(x_1, x_7, x_8, x_9) = (\pm 1, r_1, 1, 0), \ (x_1, x_7, x_8, x_9) = (\pm a, (90 - 5r_1^2), -5r_1, 6),$$

where $a$ is a square-root of $25(r_1^2 - 36)$, are also solutions (with $x_1 \neq 0$ in a
neighbourhood of 0 in $R$, and obviously all distinct there). Thus

$$L_1(r) \cap V = \{[\pm(e_1 + r_1e_4) + r_1e_7 + e_8], \ [\pm(ae_1 + r_1ae_4) + (90 - 5r_1^2)e_7 - 5r_1e_8 + 6e_9]\}. \quad (3.49)$$

We still have to see how the intersection points $L_0 \cap V$ and $L_1(r) \cap V$ are
distributed among $X_1$ and $X_2$: Suppose $f \in V(8)$ is a binary octic such that
$[f] \in L_0 \cap \mathbb{P}(V(8))$ or $[f] \in L_1(r) \cap \mathbb{P}(V(8))$; then $f$ is a linear combination
of the binary octics $e_1, e_4, e_7, e_8, e_9$ defined in (22), which involve only even
powers of $z_1$ and $z_2$; thus if $(a : b) \in \mathbb{P}^1$ is a root of one of them, so is its
negative $(a : -b)$ whence

$[f]$ lies in $X_1$ if and only if $(1 : 0)$ or $(0 : 1)$ is a root of
multiplicity $\geq 6$.

Applying this criterion, we get, using (48) and (49)

$$L_0 \cap X_1 = \emptyset, \ L_0 \cap X_2 = \{[5e_7 \pm e_9], [15e_7 \pm 5e_8 - e_9]\}, \quad (3.50)$$

$$L_1(r) \cap X_1 = \{[\pm(e_1 + r_1e_4) + r_1e_7 + e_8]\},$$

$$L_1(r) \cap X_2 = \{[\pm(ae_1 + r_1ae_4) + (90 - 5r_1^2)e_7 - 5r_1e_8 + 6e_9]\}.$$

The reader may be glad to hear now that we do not have to repeat this entire
procedure for $L_2(r)$ and $L_3(r)$; in fact, $L_1(r), L_2(r), L_3(r)$ are permuted by
$N(H)$ in the following way: For the element $\sigma \in N(H)$ we have

$$\sigma \cdot L_1(r) = L_2(\sigma \cdot r), \quad \sigma \cdot L_2(r) = L_3(\sigma \cdot r), \quad \sigma \cdot L_3(r) = L_1(\sigma \cdot r),$$

which follows from (30) (and (28)) and the definition of $R$. Thus we get that
generally for $i = 1, 2, 3$

$$L_i(r) \cap X_1 = \{P_1(r), P_2(r)\}, \ L_i(r) \cap X_2 = \{Q_1(r), Q_2(r)\} \quad (3.51)$$

where $P_1(r), P_2(r), Q_1(r), Q_2(r)$ are mutually distinct points, and this is
valid in a Zariski open $N(H)$-invariant neighbourhood of $0 \in R$. It remains
to check that
3.3. FURTHER SECTIONS AND INNER PROJECTIONS 113

\(L(0) \cap V\) consists of 32 reduced points.

We check (with \textit{Macaulay 2}) that if we substitute \(x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\) in equations (42)-(46), they define a zero-dimensional reduced subscheme of degree 32 in the projective space with coordinates \(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_7, x_8, x_9\). Taking into account (47), (50), (51), we see that all the intersections in equations (50), (51) are free of multiplicities in an open \(N(H)\)-invariant neighbourhood of \(0 \in R\) and moreover, since \(\deg X_1 = 18\), \(\deg X_2 = 14\), we must have there

\[L^0(r) \cap X_1\] consists of 12 reduced points, and \(L^0(r) \cap X_2\) consists of 4 reduced points.

Now these 4 points make up the \(H\)-orbit \(\mathcal{O}\), we wanted to find in Step 3: Clearly \(L^0(r) \cap X_2\) is \(H\)-invariant, and \(H\) acts with trivial stabilizers in \(L^0(r)\) (as is clear from (29)). Thus we have completed the program outlined at the beginning of Step 3. It just remains to notice that \([x^0] \in X_2 \cap L^0(0)\). This is clear since \([x^0] \in V\), but \(x^0\) does not have a root of multiplicity \(\ge 6\).

\textit{Step 5. (Verification of the properties of} \(N(r)\)) For the completion of the proof of Theorem 3.3.1, it remains to verify the properties of the subspace \(N(r)\) in parts (2), (i) and (iii) of that theorem. First of all, it is clear that

\[N(r) = \langle \sigma_1(r), \sigma_2(r), (1 : 0 : 0 : \cdots : 0), (0 : 1 : 0 : \cdots : 0), (0 : 0 : 1 : \cdots : 0) \rangle\]

is \(N(H)\)-invariant in the sense that \(g \cdot N(r) = N(g \cdot r)\) for \(g \in N(H)\) by the construction of \(\sigma_1, \sigma_2\) and because the last three vectors in the preceding formula are a basis in the invariant subspace \(P(T) \subset P^8\) (where by (31) \(T = T_{\langle x_0 \rangle} \oplus T_{\langle \theta \rangle}\)). Moreover, by the definition of \(\sigma_1\) in Step 2, and the formula (37) for \(\sigma_2(0)\), one has \(\dim N(0) = 4\), which thus holds also for \(r \in R\) sufficiently close to 0.

Recall that \(N\) was defined to be \(N := P(V(8)_{\langle \theta \rangle} \oplus V(4)_{\langle \theta \rangle}) \subset P^8\), and as such can be described in terms of the coordinates \((y_1 : y_2 : y_3 : y_7 : y_8 : \cdots : y_{12})\) in \(P^8\) as

\[N = \{y_1 = y_2 = y_3 = y_7 + 3y_9 = y_{10} = 0\}\]

(cf. (24)). Thus we get that \(N(0) \cap N = \emptyset\), and the same holds in an open \(N(H)\)-invariant neighbourhood of \(0\) in \(R\).

For Theorem 3.3.1, (2), (iii), it suffices to check that \(\pi_0\) maps the fibre \(p_{2|8}(p_{R|1}^{-1}(0))\) dominantly onto \(N\), which can be done by direct calculation. This concludes the proof. \(\square\)
3.3.4 Appendix A: Collection of formulas for section 2

We start with some remarks on how to calculate equivariant projections, and then we give explicit formulas for the equivariant maps in section 2.

Let \(a, b\) be nonnegative integers, \(m := \min(a, b)\), and let \(G := \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}\). We denote the irreducible \(G\)-module whose highest weight has numerical labels \(a, b\) by \(V(a, b)\). For \(k = 0, \ldots, m\) we define \(V^k := \text{Sym}^{a-k} \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^{b-k} (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\). Let \(e_1, e_2, e_3\) be the standard basis in \(\mathbb{C}^3\) and \(x_1, x_2, x_3\) the dual basis in \((\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\).

There are \(G\)-equivariant linear maps \(\Delta^k : V^k \to V^{k+1}\) for \(k = 0, \ldots, m - 1\) and \(\delta^k : V^k \to V^{k-1}\) for \(k = 1, \ldots, m\) given by

\[
\Delta^k := \sum_{i=1}^{3} \frac{\partial}{\partial e_i} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}, \quad \delta^k := \sum_{i=1}^{3} e_i \otimes x_i. \tag{3.52}
\]

(The superscript \(k\) thus only serves as a means to remember the sources and targets of the respective maps). If for some positive integers \(\alpha, \beta\) the \(G\)-module \(V^k\) contains a \(G\)-submodule isomorphic to \(V(\alpha, \beta)\) we will denote it by \(V^k(\alpha, \beta)\) to indicate the ambient module (this is unambiguous because it is known that all such modules occur with multiplicity one).

It is clear that \(\Delta^k\) is surjective and \(\delta^k\) injective; one knows that \(\ker(\Delta^k) = V^k(a - k, b - k)\) whence

\[
V^k = \bigoplus_{i=k}^{m} V^k(a - i, b - i). \tag{3.53}
\]

We want to find a formula for the \(G\)-equivariant projection of \(V^0 = \text{Sym}^a \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^b(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\) onto the subspace \(V^0(a - i, b - i)\) for \(i = 0, \ldots, m\). We call this linear map \(\pi_{a,b}^i\).

We remark that, by (53), one can decompose each vector \(v \in V^0\) as \(v = v_0 + \cdots + v_m\) where \(v_i \in V^0(a - i, b - i)\), and this decomposition is unique. Note that

\[
\delta^1 \cdots \delta^i(\ker \Delta^i) = V^0(a - i, b - i) \tag{3.54}
\]

so that
V^0 = \ker \Delta^0 \oplus \delta^1(\ker \Delta^1) \oplus \delta^1 \delta^2(\ker \Delta^2) \oplus \cdots \oplus \delta^1 \cdots \delta^i(\ker \Delta^i) \\
\quad \oplus \cdots \oplus \delta^1 \cdots \delta^m(V^m).

Of course, \pi_{a,b}^i(v) = v_i. It will be convenient to put

\[ L^i := \delta^1 \circ \delta^2 \circ \cdots \circ \delta^i \circ \Delta^{i-1} \circ \cdots \circ \Delta^1 \circ \Delta^0, \quad i = 0, \ldots, m \quad (3.55) \]

(whence \( L^0 \) is the identity) and

\[ U^i := \Delta^{i-1} \circ \Delta^{i-2} \circ \cdots \circ \Delta^0 \circ \delta^1 \circ \cdots \circ \delta^{i-1} \circ \delta^i, \quad i = 0, \ldots, m \quad (3.56) \]

(\( U^0 \) being again the identity). By Schur’s lemma, we have

\[ U^i|_{V^i(a-i,b-i)} = c_i \cdot \text{id}_{V^i(a-i,b-i)} \]

for some nonzero rational number \( c_i \in \mathbb{Q}^* \). This is easy to calculate: For example, since \( e_{a-i}^1 \otimes x_{b-i}^2 \in \ker \Delta^i = V^i(a-i,b-i) \), we have that \( c_i \) is the unique number such that

\[ U^i(e_{a-i}^1 \otimes x_{b-i}^2) = c_i \cdot e_{a-i}^1 \otimes x_{b-i}^2. \quad (3.57) \]

We will now calculate \( \pi_{a,b}^{m-l} \) for \( l = 0, \ldots, m \) by induction on \( l \); the case \( l = 0 \) can be dealt with as follows:

Write \( v = v_1 + \cdots + v_m \in V^0 \) as before. Then \( v_m = \delta^1 \delta^2 \cdots \delta^m(u_m) \) for some \( u_m \in V^m \). Now

\[ L^m(v) = L^m(v_m) = L^m(\delta^1 \delta^2 \cdots \delta^m(u_m)) \]
\[ = \delta^1 \delta^2 \cdots \delta^m \circ U^m(u_m) = c_m v_m \]

so we set

\[ \pi_{a,b}^m := \frac{1}{c_m} L^m. \quad (3.58) \]
Now assume, by induction, that \( \pi_{a,b}^{m-l}, \pi_{a,b}^{m-l+1}, \ldots, \pi_{a,b}^{m} \) have already been determined. We show how to calculate \( \pi_{a,b}^{m-l+1} \).

Now, by (54), \( v_{m-l-1} \in \delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1}(\operatorname{ker} \Delta^{m-l-1}) \). We write \( v_{m-l-1} = \delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1}(u_{m-l-1}) \), for some \( u_{m-l-1} \in \ker \Delta^{m-l-1} = V^{m-l-1}(a-(m-l-1), b-(m-l-1)) \), and using (57) we get

\[
L^{m-l-1} \left( v - \sum_{i=0}^{l} \pi_{a,b}^{m-i}(v) \right) = L^{m-l-1}(v_0 + v_1 + \cdots + v_{m-l-1})
\]

\[
= L^{m-l-1}(v_{m-l-1}) = L^{m-l-1}(\delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1}(u_{m-l-1}))
\]

\[
= \delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1} \circ \Delta^{m-l-2} \cdots \Delta^0 \circ \delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1}(u_{m-l-1})
\]

\[
= \delta^1 \cdots \delta^{m-l-1} \circ U^{m-l-1}(u_{m-l-1}) = c_{m-l-1}v_{m-l-1}.
\]

So we put

\[
\pi_{a,b}^{m-l-1} := \frac{1}{c_{m-l-1}} \left( L^{m-l-1} \left( \operatorname{id}_{V^0} - \sum_{i=0}^{l} \pi_{a,b}^{m-i} \right) \right). \tag{3.59}
\]

Formulas (52), (55), (56), (57), (58), (59) contain the algorithm to compute the \( \mathbb{G} \)-equivariant linear projection

\[
\pi_{a,b}^i : V^0 \rightarrow V^0(a-i, b-i) \subset V^0
\]

and thus to compute the associated \( \mathbb{G} \)-equivariant bilinear map

\[
\beta_{a,b}^i : V(a, 0) \times V(0, b) \rightarrow V(a-i, b-i)
\]

in suitable bases in source and target (remark that \( V(a, 0) = \operatorname{Sym}^2 \mathbb{C}^3 \) and \( V(0, b) = \operatorname{Sym}^b (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \)).

In particular, we obtain for \( a = 2, b = 1 \) the map

\[
\pi_{2,1}^0 : V^0 = \operatorname{Sym}^2 \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \rightarrow V(2, 1) \subset V^0 \tag{3.60}
\]

\[
\pi_{2,1}^0 = \operatorname{id} - \frac{1}{4} \delta^1 \Delta^0,
\]
for \( a = b = 2 \) the map
\[
\pi^0_{2,2} : V^0 = \text{Sym}^2 \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^2(\mathbb{C}^3) \rightarrow V(2, 2) \subset V^0
\] (3.61)
\[
\pi^0_{2,2} = \text{id} - \frac{1}{5} \delta^1 \Delta^0 + \frac{1}{40} \delta^1 \delta^2 \Delta^1 \Delta^0,
\]
and for \( a = b = 1 \) the map
\[
\pi^0_{1,1} : V^0 = \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \rightarrow V(1, 1) \subset V^0
\] (3.62)
\[
\pi^0_{1,1} = \text{id} - \frac{1}{3} \delta^1 \Delta^0.
\]
In the following, we will often view elements \( x \in V(a, b) \) as tensors \( x = (x_{i_1 \cdots i_b}^{j_1 \cdots j_a}) \in (\mathbb{C}^3)^\otimes a \otimes (\mathbb{C}^3)^\otimes b =: T^b_a \mathbb{C}^3 \) (the indices ranging from 1 to 3) which are covariant of order \( b \) and contravariant of order \( a \) via the natural inclusions
\[
V(a, b) \subset \text{Sym}^a \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^b(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \subset T^b_a \mathbb{C}^3
\]
(the first inclusion arises since \( V(a, b) \) is the kernel of \( \Delta^0 \), the second is a tensor product of symmetrization maps). In particular, we have the determinant tensor \( \det \in T^3_0 \mathbb{C}^3 \) and its inverse \( \det^{-1} \in T^3_0 \mathbb{C}^3 \). In formulas involving several tensors, we will also adopt the summation convention throughout.

Finally, we define
\[
\text{can} : T^b_a \mathbb{C}^3 \rightarrow \text{Sym}^a \mathbb{C}^3 \otimes \text{Sym}^b(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee,
\] (3.63)
\[
e_{j_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes e_{j_a} \otimes x_{i_1} \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{i_b} \mapsto e_{j_1} \cdots e_{j_a} \otimes x_{i_1} \cdots x_{i_b}
\]
as the canonical projection.

We write down the explicit formulas for the equivariant maps in section 2.
The map \( \Psi : V(0, 4) \rightarrow V(2, 2) \) (degree 3) is given by
\[
\Psi(f) := \pi^0_{2,2}(\text{can}(g)),
\] (3.64)
\[
g_{j_1 j_2}^{i_1 i_2} := f_{i_1 i_2 i_3 i_4} f_{i_5 i_6 i_7 i_8} f_{i_9 i_{10} i_{11} i_{12}} \det_{i_{13} i_{14} i_{15} i_{16}}^{-1} \det_{j_{17} j_{18} j_{19} j_{20}}^{-1} \det_{j_{21} j_{22} j_{23} j_{24}}^{-1} \det_{j_{25} j_{26} j_{27} j_{28}}^{-1} \det_{j_{29} j_{30} j_{31} j_{32}}^{-1}.
\]
The map \( \Phi : V(2, 2) \times V(0, 2) \rightarrow V(2, 1) \) (bilinear) is given by
\[
\Phi(g, h) := \pi^0_{2,1}(\text{can}(r)),
\] (3.65)
\[
r_{j_1 j_2}^{i_1 i_2} := g_{j_1 j_2}^{i_1 i_2} f_{i_3 i_4} \det_{i_5 i_6 i_7}^{-1}.
\]
The map $\varepsilon : V(0, 4) \times V(0, 2) \to V(2, 2)$ (bilinear) is

$$\varepsilon(f, h) := \text{can}(g), \quad g^{i_1i_2}_{j_1j_2} := f^{i_1i_2i_3i_4}h^{i_5i_6}\det_{i_3j_1}^{-1}\det_{i_4j_2}^{-1}. \quad (3.66)$$

The map $\zeta : V(0, 4) \times V(0, 2) \to V(1, 1)$ (homogeneous of degree 2 in both factors) is given by

$$\zeta(f, h) := \pi^0_{1,1}(a), \quad a_{j_1}^{i_1} := h^{i_1i_2}f^{i_3i_4i_5i_6}\det_{i_3j_1}^{-1}\det_{i_4j_2}^{-1}\det_{i_5j_3}^{-1}\det_{i_6j_4}^{-1}. \quad (3.67)$$

The map $\tilde{\gamma} : V(2, 2) \to V(1, 1)$ (homogeneous of degree 2) is given by

$$\tilde{\gamma} := \pi^0_{1,1}(u), \quad a_{j_1}^{i_1} := g^{i_1i_2}_{i_3i_4}g^{i_3i_4}_{j_1j_2}. \quad (3.68)$$

### 3.3.5 Appendix B: Collection of formulas for section 3

In section 3.1, we saw (formula (26)) that

$$\delta_{\lambda} = Q_1(x, s)a_1 + Q_2(x, s)a_2 + Q_3(x, s)a_3 + Q_4(x, s)a_4 + Q_5(x, s)a_5. \quad (3.69)$$

We collect here the explicit values of the $Q_i(x, s)$ (recall $\lambda = (1, 6\varepsilon, 1, 6)$, $\varepsilon \neq 0$):

$$Q_1(x, s) = \hat{Q}_1(x) + 2x_7s_1 + 12xs_2 + 2xgs_1 + \varepsilon(12s_1s_2 + 2s_0s_1) \quad (3.70)$$

$$Q_2(x, s) = \hat{Q}_2(x) + 4x_3s_1 + 12xgs_2 + \varepsilon(2s_1^2 - 6s_2^2) + 2s_0s_2 \quad (3.71)$$

$$Q_3(x, s) = \hat{Q}_3(x) + 2x_3s_1 + 12xgs_2 + 64x_2s_5 + 64xgs_3 \quad (3.72)$$

$$Q_4(x, s) = \hat{Q}_4(x) + 4x_5s_1 + 12xgs_2 + 12xgs_2 \quad (3.73)$$

$$Q_5(x, s) = \hat{Q}_5(x) + 4x_6s_1 + 12xgs_2 + 12xgs_2 \quad (3.74)$$
where

\[ \hat{Q}_1(x) = -192x^2 - 192x_3x_6 + 384x^2_2 - 192x_5^2 - 192x_2x_5 + 384x^2_2 \]

\[ -12x_1x_4 + 12x_7x_8 + 180x_8x_9, \]

\[ \hat{Q}_2(x) = 64x^2_5 - 192x_3x_6 - 128x^3_3 - 64x^3_2 + 192x_2x_5 + 128x^2_2 \]

\[ -2x^2_4 + 16x^2_1 + 2x^2_7 - 16x^2_5 - 50x^2_0, \]

\[ \hat{Q}_3(x) = 96x_5x_6 - 672x_3x_5 - 672x_2x_6 + 1248x_2x_3 \]

\[ -12x_1x_7 + 12x_4x_8 + 180x_1x_9, \]

\[ \hat{Q}_4(x) = 6x_1x_6 + 42x_3x_4 + 84x_1x_6 + 156x_1x_3 \]

\[ -6x_5x_7 - 42x_2x_7 + 24x_5x_8 - 264x_2x_8 + 30x_5x_9 - 30x_2x_9, \]

\[ \hat{Q}_5(x) = -6x_4x_5 - 42x_2x_4 + 84x_1x_5 + 156x_1x_2 \]

\[ +6x_6x_7 + 42x_3x_7 + 24x_6x_8 - 264x_3x_8 - 20x_6x_9 + 30x_3x_9. \]

The polynomials \( q_1, \ldots, q_5 \) defining \( \tilde{Y}_\lambda \subset R \times \mathbb{P}^8 \) (cf. Theorem 3.2.1) are:

\[ q_1 = (-192r^2_3 - 192r_3 + 384)y_1y_2 + (-192r^2_2 - 192r_2 + 384)y_1y_3 \]

\[ +(-12r_1)y_2y_3 + 12y_7y_8 + 180y_8y_9 + 2y_7y_11 + 12y_8y_12 \]

\[ +2y_9y_11 + \epsilon(12y_11y_12) + 2y_10y_11, \]

\[ q_2 = (64r^2_3 - 192r_3 - 128)y_1y_2 + (-64r^2_2 + 192r_2 + 128)y_1y_3 \]

\[ +(-2r^2_1 + 16)y_2y_3 + 2y^2_7 - 16y^2_5 - 50y^2_0 + 4y_8y_11 + 12y_9y_12 \]

\[ +\epsilon(2y^2_11 - 6y^2_12) + 2y_10y_12, \]

\[ q_3 = (96r_2r_3 - 672r_2 - 672r_3 + 1248)y_1 \]

\[ -12y_7 + 12r_1y_8 + 180y_9 + 2r_1y_11 + 12y_12, \]

\[ q_4 = (6r_1r_3 + 42r_1 + 84r_3 + 156)y_2 + (-6r_2 - 42)y_7 + (24r_2 - 264)y_8 \]

\[ +(30r_2 - 30)y_9 + (4r_2 + 12)y_11 + (-12r_2 + 12)y_12, \]

\[ q_5 = (-6r_1r_2 - 42r_1 + 84r_2 + 156)y_3 + (6r_1 + 42)y_7 + (24r_3 - 264)y_8 \]

\[ +(-30r_3 + 30)y_9 + (4r_3 + 12)y_11 + (12r_3 - 12)y_12. \]
Chapter 4

The rationality of the moduli spaces of plane curves of sufficiently large degree

4.1 Introduction

In this chapter we deal with the question whether the orbit spaces $\mathbb{P}/G$ are rational in an "asymptotic way" (where as usual $\mathbb{P}$ is a projective space and $G$ is a reductive algebraic group acting linearly in $\mathbb{P}$). We first recall some general structural results. If $G$ is not assumed connected, in fact for $G$ a finite solvable group, D. Saltman has shown in [Sa] that the answer to this question is negative in general (Emmy Noether had apparently conjectured that the quotient should be rational in this case). No counterexamples are known for connected complex reductive groups $G$.

For simply connected classical groups except $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$ for $n > 12$, the quotients $\mathbb{P}/G$ are known to be stably rational, cf. [Bogo1], [CT-S]. [Bogo1] claims the result for all $\text{Spin}_n(\mathbb{C})$ but the proof contains a mistake pointed out by P. Katsylo. The question whether stably rational varieties are always rational is the well-known Zariski problem which Beauville, Colliot-Thélène, Sansuc and Swinnerton-Dyer [B-CT-SwD] answered in the negative as well: There are three-dimensional conic bundles $X$ over rational surfaces which are irrational, but $X \times \mathbb{P}^3$ is rational. This uses the method of intermediate Jacobians by Clemens-Griffiths [C-G] which, however, seems to work only
for threefolds. In general, it is rather hard to distinguish stably rational and rational varieties. The method connected with the birational invariance of the Brauer-Grothendieck group used previously by Artin and Mumford [A-M] to obtain more elementary examples of unirational non-rational threefolds, is insensitive to this distinction (unirational varieties constitute a strictly bigger class than stably rational ones; e.g. Saltman’s counterexamples mentioned above are not even stably rational). The reader may find these and other methods to prove irrationality, including the use of Noether-Fano inequalities via untwisting of birational maps and Kollár’s method of differential forms in characteristic $p$ to prove non-rationality of some general hypersurfaces, in the survey by V. A. Iskovskikh and Yu. G. Prokhorov [Is-Pr].

The geometrically most relevant case of the general question discussed above seems to be the case of the moduli space of projective hypersurfaces of degree $d$ in $\mathbb{P}^n$, which we denote by $\text{Hyp}(d, n)$. Here rationality is known in the following cases:

- $n = 1$ (the classical case of binary forms resp. sets of points on the projective line), $d$ odd [Kat83], $d$ even [Bo-Ka], [Bogo2]
- $n = 2$, $d \leq 3$ (well known), $d = 4$ ([Kat92/2], [Kat96]), $d \equiv 1 \pmod 4$ ([Shep]), $d \equiv 1 \pmod 9$ and $d \geq 19$ ([Shep]); $d \equiv 0 \pmod 3$ and $d \geq 1821$ [Kat84] (this article contains the remark that the author obtained the result also for $d \geq 210$, unpublished); the same paper also gives some results for congruences to the modulus 39; furthermore, there are some unpublished additional cases in the case of plane curves which we do not try to enumerate.
- $n = 3$, $d \leq 2$ (obvious), $d = 3$ (Clebsch and Salmon; but see [Be]).
- $n > 3$, $d \leq 2$ (obvious).

This represents what we could extract from the literature. It is hard to say if it is exhaustive. The reader may consult the very good (though not recent) survey article [Dolg1] for much more information on the rationality problem for fields of invariants.

The main theorem of the present chapter is

**Theorem 4.1.0.1.** The moduli space of plane curves of sufficiently large degree $d >> 0$ under projective equivalence is rational.
More precisely, for \( d = 3n, d \geq 1821 \), this was proven by Katsylo [Kat84] as a glance back at the preceding summary shows. We use this result and don’t improve the bound for \( d \). For \( d \equiv 1 \pmod{3} \), we obtain rationality for \( d \geq 37 \). For \( d \equiv 2 \pmod{3} \), we need \( d \geq 65 \).

Let us turn to some open problems. First of all, the method used in this paper seems to generalize and -provided the required genericity properties hold and can be verified computationally- could yield a proof of the rationality of \( \text{Hyp}(d, n) \) for fixed \( n \) if the degree \( d \) is large enough and \( n + 1 \) does not divide \( d \). The latter case might be amenable to the techniques of [Kat84] in general. Thus the case of the moduli spaces of surfaces of degree \( d \) in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) seems now tractable with some diligence and effort. But we do not see how one could obtain results on \( \text{Hyp}(d, n) \) for all \( n \) (and \( d \) sufficiently large compared to \( n \)).

More importantly, whereas we think that it is highly plausible that \( \text{Hyp}(d, n) \) is always rational if \( d \) is sufficiently large compared to \( n \), we do not want to hazard any guess in the case where \( d \) is small. In fact, we do not know any truly convincing philosophical reason why \( \text{Hyp}(d, n) \) should be rational in general; the present techniques of proving rationality always seem to force one into assuming that \( d \) is sufficiently large if one wants to obtain an infinite series of rational examples by a uniform method. Moreover, it can be quite painstaking and tricky to get a hold of the situation if \( d \) is small as Katsylo’s tour de force proof for \( \mathcal{M}_3 \) (i.e. \( \text{Hyp}(4, 2) \)) in [Kat92/2], [Kat96] amply illustrates. The maybe easiest unsolved cases are \( \text{Hyp}(6, 2) \) (plane sextics) and \( \text{Hyp}(4, 3) \) (quartic surfaces). Note that the former space is birational to the moduli space of polarized K3 surfaces \((S, h)\) of degree 2 (thus \( S \) is a nonsingular projective K3 surface and \( h \in \text{Pic}(S) \) is the class of an ample divisor with \( h^2 = 2 \)), and the latter space is birational to the moduli space of polarized K3 surfaces of degree 4.

We would like to thank Fedor Bogomolov and Yuri Tschinkel for suggesting this problem and helpful discussions.

### 4.2 Proof of rationality
4.2.1 Outline of proof

The structural pattern of the proof is similar to [Shep]; there the so-called method of covariants is introduced, and we learnt a lot from studying that source.

We fiber the space $\mathbb{P} \left( \text{Sym}^d (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \right)$ of degree $d$ plane curves over the space of plane quartics, if $d \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, and over the space of plane octics, if $d \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$, i.e. we construct $\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant maps

$$S_d : \text{Sym}^d (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \to \text{Sym}^4 (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$$

and

$$T_d : \text{Sym}^d (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \to \text{Sym}^8 (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$$

($S_d$ coincides with the covariant used in [Shep] for the case $d = 9n + 1$). These maps are of degree 4 as polynomials in the coordinates on the source spaces, i.e. of degree 4 in the curve coefficients. They are constructed via the symbolic method recalled in section 4.2.2. Furthermore they induce dominant rational maps on the associated projective spaces. We remark here that the properties of $S_d$ and $T_d$ essential for the proof are that they are of fixed low degree in the curve coefficients, take values in spaces of curves of fixed low degree, and are sufficiently generic.

We now focus on the case $d \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$. The proof has three main steps:

1. Hyp(4, 2) is stably rational, more precisely its product with $\mathbb{P}^8$ is rational; cf. [Bo-Ka], Theorem 1.1 for this.

2. We find a linear subspace $L_S \subset \text{Sym}^d (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$ such that $\mathbb{P}(L_S)$ is contained in the base locus $B_{S_d}$ of $S_d$ with a full triple structure, i.e. $I_{\mathbb{P}(L_S)}^3 \supset I_{B_{S_d}}$, and consider the projection $\pi_{L_S}$ away from $\mathbb{P}(L_S)$ onto $\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee / L_S)$. We show that a general fibre of $S_d$ is birationally a vector bundle over a rational base.

3. The quotient map

$$\mathbb{P}\text{Sym}^4 (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \dashrightarrow (\mathbb{P}\text{Sym}^4 (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee) / \text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$$

has a section $\sigma_4$. Pulling back the linear fibrations constructed in (2) via $\sigma_4$ we show that the moduli space of plane curves of degree $d$ is birational to $\text{Hyp}(4, 2) \times \mathbb{P}^N$, where $N$ is large, whence we conclude by (1).
4.2. PROOF OF RATIONALITY

The main computational difficulty occurs in (2) where we have to establish that \( L_S \) is sufficiently generic. Projecting from \( \mathbb{P}(L_S) \) we obtain a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{P} \text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \xrightarrow{S_d} \mathbb{P} \text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \\
\downarrow \pi_{L_S} \\
\mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee / L_S)
\end{array}
\]

We show that

\((*)\) for a particular (hence a general) \( \bar{g} \in \mathbb{P}(\text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee / L_S) \) the map

\[
S_d|_{\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)} : \mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg) \rightarrow \mathbb{P} \text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee
\]

is surjective.

Note that \( S_d|_{\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)} \) is linear since \( L_S \) is contained in the base locus with full triple structure and \( S_d \) is of degree 4 in the curve coefficients. It is therefore enough to explicitly construct points in the image that span \( \mathbb{P} \text{Sym}^4(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \). From this it follows at once that a general fibre of \( S_d \) is mapped dominantly by \( \pi_{L_S} \) whence we may view such a fibre birationally as a vector bundle over a rational base. To understand better why the dominance of \( S_d \) is not sufficient here, it is instructive to keep the following example in mind:

**Example 4.2.1.1.** Consider the rational map

\[
S : \mathbb{P}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1, \quad x \mapsto (Q_1(x) : Q_2(x))
\]

where \( Q_1, Q_2 \) are quadric cones with vertex \( L \). \( S \) is dominant. Projection from the vertex \( L \) to \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) is also dominant, but the quadric cones (i.e. the fibers of \( S \)) do not map dominantly to \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) (see Figure ??). The projection fibers are the lines through \( L \) and indeed each such line is contained completely in one cone in the pencil \( \lambda Q_1 + \mu Q_2 \).

The base locus \( B \) of \( S \) consists of 4 lines that meet in \( L \). If on the other hand we project from a smooth point \( L' \subset B \) then a general fiber of \( S \) maps dominantly to \( \mathbb{P}^2 \). Indeed a general line through \( L' \) intersects all cones.

The complications in proving \((*)\) arise due to the fact that the natural description of \( L_S \) is in terms of the monomials which span it, whereas \( S_d \) can be most easily evaluated on forms which are written as sums of powers of linear forms. These two points of view do not match, and we cannot repose on methods in [Shep]. Instead we introduce new techniques in section 4.2.4 to solve this difficulty:
• We use interpolation polynomials to write down elements in $L_S$ as sums of powers of linear forms.

• Next we employ considerations of leading terms (or, geometrically, jets at infinity) to eliminate the interpolation polynomials, from our formulae.

• For large enough $d = 3n + 1$, we finally reduce (*) to the property that a certain matrix $M(n)$ has full rank. The size of $M(n)$ is independent of $n$ while (and this is the main point) its entries are of the form

$$\sum_{\nu} \rho_\nu P_\nu(n)$$

where $P_\nu$ are polynomials of fixed degree (i.e. independent of $n$), $\rho_\nu$ are constants, and the number of summands in the expression is independent of $n$. This is possible only because we eliminated the interpolation polynomials in the previous step.

• By choosing a point $g$ with integer coefficients we can arrange that $\rho_\nu$ and $P_\nu(n)$ are defined over $\mathbb{Q}$ with denominators that are not divisible by a small prime $\varphi$ which we call the precision of our calculation. Thus if we work over the finite field $\mathbb{F}_\varphi$, the matrix $M(n)$ is periodic in $n$ with period $\varphi(\varphi - 1)$. A computer algebra program is then used to check that these matrices all have full rank. By semicontinuity, this proves that $M(n)$ has full rank for all $n$ in characteristic 0.

In a rather round-about sense, we have also been guided by the principle that evaluation of a polynomial at a special point can be much cheaper than computing the polynomial.

4.2.2 Notation and definition of the covariants

For definiteness, the base field will be $\mathbb{C}$, the field of complex numbers, though one might replace it by any algebraically closed field of characteristic 0 throughout.

Let $G := \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$, and let $\tilde{G} := \text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ be the adjoint form of $G$. We denote by $V(k)$ the irreducible $G$-representation $\text{Sym}^k(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$. We fix a positive integer $d$ not divisible by 3, $d = 3n + 1$ or $d = 3n + 2$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

The symbol $[k]$, $k \in \mathbb{N}$, denotes the set of integers from 0 (incl.) to $k$ (incl.).
4.2. **Proof of Rationality**

Let \( x_1, x_2, x_3 \in (\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \) denote the basis dual to the standard basis in \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) and put \( \mathbf{x} := (x_1, x_2, x_3) \). We will use Schwartz’s multi-index notation and denote multi-indices by lower case boldface letters. Thus we write a general homogeneous form \( f \in V(d) \) of degree \( d \) as

\[
f = \sum_{|\mathbf{i}|=d, \frac{d!}{|\mathbf{i}|} \mathbf{A}_i \mathbf{x}^\mathbf{i},
\]

where \( \mathbf{i} = i_1 i_2 i_3, |\mathbf{i}| := i_1 + i_2 + i_3, \mathbf{A}_i = A_{i_1 i_2 i_3}, \mathbf{x}^\mathbf{i} = x_1^{i_1} x_2^{i_2} x_3^{i_3} \). We will use the symbolical method introduced by Aronhold and Clebsch to write down \( G \)-equivariant maps (covariants) from \( V(d) \) to \( V(4) \) (if \( d = 3n + 1 \)) or to \( V(8) \) (if \( d = 3n + 2 \)). It is explained in [G-Y] and, from a modern point of view, in [Dolg2], chapter 1. We denote by \( \alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) a vector of symbolic variables, and also introduce vectors \( \beta, \gamma, \delta \), similarly. We write \( \alpha_x = \alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \alpha_3 x_3 \), and similarly \( \beta_x, \gamma_x, \delta_x \). Moreover we define the bracket factor \( (\alpha \beta \gamma) \) by

\[
(\alpha \beta \gamma) := \det \begin{pmatrix}
\alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \\
\beta_1 & \beta_2 & \beta_3 \\
\gamma_1 & \gamma_2 & \gamma_3
\end{pmatrix}
\]

and write \( (\alpha \beta \delta) \) etc. similarly. The idea in this calculus is to write \( f \in V(d) \) symbolically as a power of a linear form in several ways:

\[
f = \alpha_x^d = \beta_x^d = \gamma_x^d = \delta_x^d,
\]

whence the identities

\[
\mathbf{A}_i = \alpha_i^d = \beta_i^d = \gamma_i^d = \delta_i^d.
\]

If \( d = 3n + 1 \), define a covariant \( S_d : V(d) \to V(4) \) of order 4 and degree 4 by the following prescription:

\[
I(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) := (\alpha \beta \gamma)(\alpha \beta \delta)(\alpha \gamma \delta)(\beta \gamma \delta)
\]

\[
S_d(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) := I^n \alpha_x \beta_x \gamma_x \delta_x.
\]

The formula for \( S_d \) should be read in the following way: The right hand side of (5), when we multiply it out formally, is a sum of monomials \( \alpha_i^1 \beta_i^1 \gamma_i^1 \delta_i^1 \mathbf{x}^\mathbf{e} \), \( i, j, k, l \in [d]^3, \mathbf{e} \in [4]^3 \), and \( |\mathbf{i}| = \cdots = |\mathbf{i}| = d, |\mathbf{e}| = 4 \). Thus one can use
equations (1) and (3) to rewrite the right-hand-side unambiguously in terms of the coefficients $A_i$ of $f \in V(d)$. Hence $S_d$ may be viewed as a map from $V(d)$ to $V(4)$, homogeneous of degree 4 in the coefficients $A_i$, which is clearly $G$-equivariant. By abuse of notation, we denote the induced rational map

$$S_d : \mathbb{P} V(d) \rightarrow \mathbb{P} V(4)$$

by the same letter. Note that $I$ defined by equation (4) may be viewed as an invariant of plane cubics $I : V(3) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ of degree 4 in the coefficients of the cubic. In fact, this is the famous Clebsch invariant, vanishing on the locus of Fermat cubics, or vanishing on the equi-anharmonic cubics, i.e. nonsingular plane cubics which can be written as a double cover of $\mathbb{P}^1$ branched in four points with equi-anharmonic cross-ratio. Equi-anharmonic cross-ratio means cross-ratio equal to minus a cube root of 1. Equi-anharmonic quadruples of points in $\mathbb{P}^1$ are one of the two possible $\text{PGL}_2$-orbits of 4 points in $\mathbb{P}^1$ with non-trivial isotropy group (the other orbit being quadruples with harmonic cross-ratio, i.e. equal to $-1$, $1/2$ or 2). See [D-K], (5.13), for details.

The letter $S$ in $S_d$ was chosen in honor of the 19th century Italian geometer Gaetano Scorza, who studied in detail the map $S_4$, called the Scorza map (cf. [D-K], §6 and §7, and [Dolg3], section 6.4.1).

Similarly, for $d = 3n + 2$, we define a covariant $T_d : V(d) \rightarrow V(8)$ of order 8 and degree 4 by

$$T_d(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) := I^o\alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \delta^2.$$  

and denote the induced rational map $T_d : \mathbb{P} V(d) \rightarrow \mathbb{P} V(8)$ by the same letter.

We remark that it is hard to calculate the values of $S_d$ (or $T_d$) on a general homogeneous form $f$ of degree $d$ without knowing the entire expression of $S_d$ (resp. $T_d$) as a polynomial in the coefficients $A_i$, which is awkward. One can, however, work directly with the symbolic expressions given in (5) and (7) if one writes $f$ as a linear combination of $d$-th powers of linear forms:

$$f = \lambda_1 l_1^d + \cdots + \lambda_N l_N^d, \quad \text{some} \quad N \in \mathbb{N}.$$  

For linear forms $l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]$ we use the notation

$$I(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p), \quad S_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p), \quad T_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p).$$
which is defined via formulas (4), (5), (7), but where for the vectors $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ of symbolic variables we substitute the vectors of coordinates w.r.t. $x_1, x_2, x_3$ of $l_i, l_j, l_k$, and $l_p$. One then has the following easy, but fundamental multi-linearity properties of $S_d$ and $T_d$ whose proof is a straight-forward computation and therefore omitted.

**Lemma 4.2.2.1.** We have

\begin{align*}
S_d(f) &= 24 \sum \lambda_i \lambda_j \lambda_k \lambda_p S_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p) \\
T_d(f) &= 24 \sum \lambda_i \lambda_j \lambda_k \lambda_p T_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p)
\end{align*}

(4.10) (4.11)

The right-hand sums run over all $(i, j, k, p)$ with $1 \leq i < j < k < p \leq N$.

### 4.2.3 Special linear subspaces of the base loci

The group $G = \text{SL}_3 \mathbb{C}$ is a rank 2 complex semisimple algebraic group, and choosing the standard matrices $T$ of diagonal matrices as maximal torus, and the group of upper-triangular matrices as Borel subgroup, one has the notions of roots, positive and simple roots, and simple coroots $H_1, H_2$ available. Corresponding to $H_1, H_2$ one has one-parameter subgroups $\lambda_{H_1}, \lambda_{H_2} : \mathbb{C}^* \to T$ given by

\[ \lambda_{H_1}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & t^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \lambda_{H_2}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & t & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}. \]

(4.12)

For $d = 3n + 1$, we may view the covariant $S_d$ as an element in

\[ (\text{Sym}^4 V(d) \vee \otimes V(4))^G, \]

(4.13)

a $G$-invariant polynomial of degree 4 in the curve coefficients $A_i, \ i \in [d]^3$, $|i| = d$, with values in $V(4)$. As such it is a linear combination of monomials

\[ A_i A_j A_k A_l x^e, \]

(4.14)

where $i, j, k, l \in [d]^3$, $|i| = \cdots = |k| = d$, $e \in [4]^3$, $|e| = 4$.

Similarly, for $d = 3n + 2$, $T_d$ can be viewed as an element of

\[ (\text{Sym}^4 V(d) \vee \otimes V(8))^G, \]

(4.15)
i.e. a \( G \)-invariant polynomial of degree 4 in the curve coefficients \( A_i, i \in [d]^3, |i| = d \), with values in \( V(8) \). It is a linear combination of monomials

\[
A_i A_j A_k A_l x^e,
\]

where \( i, j, k, l \in [d]^3, |i| = \cdots = |k| = d, e \in [8]^3, |e| = 8 \).

The following proposition is an important ingredient in the proof of rationality.

**Proposition 4.2.3.1.** For \( d = 3n+1 \), the projectivization of the linear space

\[
L_S = x_1^{2n+3} \cdot \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]_{n-2} \subset V(d)
\]

is contained in the base scheme \( B_S \) of the rational map

\[
S_d : \mathbb{P} V(d) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P} V(4)
\]

with a full triple structure, i.e.

\[
\mathcal{I}_{\mathbb{P}(L_S)}^3 \supset \mathcal{I}_{B_S}.
\]

Similarly, for \( d = 3n+2 \), the projectivization of the linear space

\[
L_T = x_1^{2n+5} \cdot \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]_{n-3} \subset V(d)
\]

is contained in the base scheme \( B_T \) of

\[
T_d : \mathbb{P} V(d) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P} V(8)
\]

with a full triple structure.

**Proof.** Regardless of whether \( d = 3n+1 \) or \( d = 3n+2 \), the conditions that the monomials in (14) or (16) are invariant under the actions of the one-parameter subgroups \( \lambda_{H_1} \) resp. \( \lambda_{H_2} \) read

\[
i_1 + j_1 + k_1 + l_1 - i_2 - j_2 - k_2 - l_2 - e_1 + e_2 = 0 \quad \text{resp.} \quad (4.19)
\]

\[
i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2 - i_3 - j_3 - k_3 - l_3 - e_2 + e_3 = 0.
\]

Now for \( d = 3n+1 \) we get

\[
4(3n+1) = |i| + |j| + |k| + |l|
\]

\[
= 3(i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2) + (e_1 - e_2) + (e_3 - e_2)
\]

\[
= 3(i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2) + 4 - 3e_2.
\]
and for $d = 3n + 2$ one has
\[
4(3n + 2) = |i| + |j| + |k| + |l| = 3(i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2) + (e_1 - e_2) + (e_3 - e_2) = 3(i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2) + 8 - 3e_2. \tag{4.22}
\]

In both cases then it follows that
\[
\begin{align*}
i_1 + j_1 + k_1 + l_1 &= 4n + e_1, \quad (4.23) \\
i_2 + j_2 + k_2 + l_2 &= 4n + e_2, \\
i_3 + j_3 + k_3 + l_3 &= 4n + e_3.
\end{align*}
\]

In particular, for $d = 3n + 1$, $i_1 + j_1 + k_1 + l_1 \leq 4n + 4$, which means that at most 1 out of the 4 indices $i_1$, $j_1$, $k_1$, $l_1$ can be $\geq (4n + 4)/2 + 1 = 2n + 3$. Since $I_{LS}$ is generated by those $A_i$ with $i_1 < 2n + 3$, this proves the first assertion.

For $d = 3n + 2$, $i_1 + j_1 + k_1 + l_1 \leq 4n + 8$, whence at most 1 out of $i_1$, $j_1$, $k_1$, $l_1$ can be $\geq (4n + 8)/2 + 1 = 2n + 5$, which proves the proposition. \hfill \Box

**Remark 4.2.3.2.** By construction, $L_S$ (resp. $L_T$) have the following basic property: For $g \in V(d) \setminus L_S$ (resp. $g \in V(d) \setminus L_T$), the restriction $S_d \mid_{P(L_S+Cg)}$ (resp. $T_d \mid_{P(L_T+Cg)}$) is linear.

### 4.2.4 Fiberwise surjectivity of the covariants

To begin with, we will show how some elements of $L_S$ (resp. $L_T$) can be written as sums of powers. For this let $K$ be a positive integer.

**Definition 4.2.4.1.** Let $b = (b_1, \ldots, b_K) \in \mathbb{C}^K$ be given. Then we denote by

\[
p_i^b(c) := \prod_{1 \leq j \leq K, j \neq i} \frac{c - b_j}{b_i - b_j} \quad (4.24)
\]

for $i = 1, \ldots, K$ the interpolation polynomials of degree $K - 1$ w.r.t. $b$ in the one variable $c$. 

---

**Proof of Rationality 131**
Lemma 4.2.4.2. Let \( b = (b_1, \ldots, b_K) \in \mathbb{C}^K \), \( b_i \neq b_j \) for \( i \neq j \), and set \( x = x_1, y = \lambda x_2 + \mu x_3 \), \((\lambda, \mu) \neq (0, 0)\). Suppose \( d > K \) and put \( l_i := b_i x + y \). Then for each \( c \in \mathbb{C} \) with \( c \neq b_i \), \( i \), \( f(c) = p_1^b(c)l_1^d + \cdots + p_K^b(c)l_K^d - (cx + y)^d \) (4.25) is nonzero and divisible by \( x^K \).

Proof. The coefficient of the monomial \( x^A y^B \) in \( f(c) \) is equal to
\[
\binom{d}{A} (p_1^b(c)b_1^A + \cdots + p_K^b(c)b_K^A - c^A).
\]
For \( A \leq K - 1 \) one has
\[
c^A = p_1^b(c)b_1^A + \cdots + p_K^b(c)b_K^A.
\]
for all \( c \) by interpolation. \( \square \)

Choosing \( K = 2n + 3 \), we obtain elements \( f(c) \in L_S \), and for \( K = 2n + 5 \) elements \( f(c) \in L_T \). Now for \( d = 3n + 1 \) consider the diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg) & \subset & \mathbb{P}V(d) - S_d \rightarrow \mathbb{P}V(4) \\
\downarrow \pi_{L_S} & & \downarrow \\
g & \in & \mathbb{P}(V(d)/L_S)
\end{array}
\]

or for \( d = 3n + 2 \) the diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{P}(L_T + Cg) & \subset & \mathbb{P}V(d) - T_d \rightarrow \mathbb{P}V(8) \\
\downarrow \pi_{L_T} & & \downarrow \\
g & \in & \mathbb{P}(V(d)/L_T)
\end{array}
\]

The aim of this section is to prove

Proposition 4.2.4.3. Let \( d = 3n + 1 \geq 37 \). Then there exists a \( g \in V(d) \) such that
\[
S_d|_{\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)} : \mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}V(4)
\]
is surjective. For \( d = 3n + 2 \geq 65 \) there exists a \( g \in V(d) \) such that
\[
T_d|_{\mathbb{P}(L_T + Cg)} : \mathbb{P}(L_T + Cg) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}V(8)
\]
is surjective.
We will prove the case \( d = 3n + 1 \) first. The case \( d = 3n + 2 \) is very similar, and we will deal with it afterwards.

We start by constructing points in the image of \( S_d \):

**Lemma 4.2.4.4.** Consider \( S_d(f(c) + g) \) as an element of \( \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3, c] \) and write

\[
S_d(f(c) + g) = Q_d c^d + \cdots + Q_0
\]

with \( Q_i \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3] \). Then \( [Q_i] \in S_d(\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)) \) for all \( i \).

**Proof.** The map

\[
\varphi : \mathbb{A}^1 \to \mathbb{P} V(4)
\]

\[
c \mapsto S_d(f(c) + g)
\]

gives a rational curve \( X \) in \( S_d(\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)) \). Since by Remark 4.2.3.2, \( S_d |_{\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)} \) is linear, the linear span of \( X \) is contained in \( S_d(\mathbb{P}(L_S + Cg)) \). Now \( \langle X \rangle = \langle Q_0, \ldots, Q_d \rangle \) which proves the claim. \( \Box \)

Surprisingly, for \( i \) large enough, the \( Q_i \) do not depend on the vector \( b = (b_1, \ldots, b_K) \) chosen to construct \( f(c) \):

**Proposition 4.2.4.5.** If

\[
S_d(f(c) + g) = Q_d c^d + \cdots + Q_0, \quad Q_i \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3] \]

and

\[
S_d(-(cx + y)^d + g) = Q'_d c^d + \cdots + Q'_0, \quad Q'_i \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3] \]

then \( Q_i = Q'_i \) for \( i \geq K \).

**Proof.** Write \( g \) as a sum of \( d \)th powers of linear forms

\[
g = m_1^d + \cdots + m_{\text{const}}^d, \quad (4.28)
\]
where const is a positive integer that will be fixed (independently of \( n \)) in the later discussion. Then (using \( I_{B_{2}} \subset \mathcal{I}_{P(L_{2})} \) and Lemma 4.2.2.1)

\[
S_{d}(f(c) + \epsilon g) = S_{d}\left(p_{1}^{b}(c)I_{1}^{d} + \cdots + p_{k}^{b}(c)I_{k}^{d} - (cx + y)^{d}\right)
+ \epsilon m_{1}^{d} + \cdots + \epsilon m_{\text{const}}^{d}
\]

\[
= 24\left(\epsilon^{3} \sum_{j<k<p} p_{j}^{b}(c)I(l_{j}, m_{j}, m_{k}, m_{p})^{n}l_{j}m_{j}m_{k}m_{p}
- \epsilon^{3} \sum_{j<k<p} I(cx + y, m_{j}, m_{k}, m_{p})^{n}(cx + y)m_{j}m_{k}m_{p}
+ \epsilon^{4} \sum_{i<j<k<p} I(m_{i}, m_{j}, m_{k}, m_{p})^{n}m_{i}m_{j}m_{k}m_{p}\right)
\]

For \( \epsilon = 1 \) we find

\[
S_{d}(f(c) + g) = \sum_{i, j, k, p} p_{i}^{b}(c)I(l_{i}, m_{j}, m_{k}, m_{p})^{n}l_{i}m_{i}m_{j}m_{k}m_{p}
\]

\[+ S_{d}(- (cx + y)^{d} + g).\]

Since \( \deg p_{i}^{b} = K - 1 \), the assertion follows.

Next we will investigate the dependence of \( Q_{t} \) on \( n \) for \( t \geq K \).

We choose a fixed constant \( \varphi \in \mathbb{N} \) (the “precision”) with \( d - \varphi + 1 \geq K \) and \( \varphi \leq n \) (later \( \varphi \) will be a prime number).

**Lemma 4.2.4.6.** For \( 3n + 1 - \varphi \leq s \leq 3n \), the coefficient of \( e^{s} \) in \( I(cx + y, m_{i}, m_{j}, m_{k})^{n} \) is of the form

\[
g^{n}P(n)
\]

where \( g \in \mathbb{C} \) (independent of \( n \) and \( s \)) and \( P(n) \) is a polynomial of degree \( 3n - s < \varphi \). \( P(n) \) is, as a polynomial in \( \mathbb{C}[n] \) divisible by

\[
\binom{n}{n - \left\lceil \frac{s}{3} \right\rceil}.
\]

If the coefficients of the \( m_{i} \) are integers and \( \varphi \) is a prime number, then the reduction of the coefficient of \( e^{s} \) in \( I(cx + y, m_{i}, m_{j}, m_{k})^{n} \) modulo \( \varphi \) is still of the form

\[
g^{n}P(n)
\]
4.2. PROOF OF RATIONALITY 135

with \( \varrho \in \mathbb{F}_p \) and \( P(n) \in \mathbb{F}_p[n] \) satisfying the same independence and divisibility conditions as above.

Proof. Calculating either over \( \mathbb{C} \) or over \( \mathbb{F}_p \), we have

\[
I(cx + y, m_i, m_j, m_k)^n
\]

(4.33)

\[
= (cx + y, m_i, m_j, m_k)^n(cx + y, m_i, m_j)^n(\xi c + \eta c)^n(\xi c + \eta c)^n
\]

where the \( \xi 's \) and \( \eta 's \) are constants (fixed once the \( m 's \) are fixed). If any of the \( \xi 's \) vanishes the polynomial \( I(cx + y, m_i, m_j, m_k)^n \) is of degree \( \leq 2n \) in \( c \). Since \( s > 3n - \varrho \geq 2n \), in this situation the coefficient of \( c^s \) is 0 and we are finished. Assume therefore that the \( \xi 's \) are invertible.

The above expression expands to

\[
\left( \sum_{p=1}^{n} \binom{n}{p} \xi_i^p \xi_j^q \xi_k^{n-p-q} \right) \cdot \left( \sum_{q=1}^{n} \binom{n}{q} \xi_i^q \xi_j^r \xi_k^{n-q} \right)
\]

\[
\cdot \left( \sum_{r=1}^{n} \binom{n}{r} \xi_j^r \eta_j^r \right) \cdot (m_i, m_j, m_k)^n
\]

and the coefficient of \( c^s \) is

\[
(m_i, m_j, m_k)^n \sum_{p+q+r=s} \binom{n}{p} \binom{n}{q} \binom{n}{r} \xi_i^p \xi_j^q \xi_k^{n-p-q} \eta_j^r \eta_j^r \eta_j^r.
\]

Put \( p' = n - p, q' = n - q, r' = n - r \) and rewrite this as

\[
((m_i, m_j, m_k) \xi_i \xi_j \xi_k)^n \sum_{p'+q'+r'=3n-s} \binom{n}{p'} \binom{n}{q'} \binom{n}{r'} \xi_i^{p'} \xi_j^{q'} \xi_k^{n-p'-q'-r'} \eta_j^{p'} \eta_j^{q'} \eta_j^{r'}.
\]

The first claim of the lemma over \( \mathbb{C} \) is obvious now. The reductions of the binomial coefficients modulo \( \varrho \) are polynomials in \( n \) over \( \mathbb{F}_p \) if \( p', q', r' \leq \varrho \).

Our conditions on \( s \) imply this, since

\[ p', q', r' \leq p' + q' + r' = 3n - s < \varrho. \]

As for the stated divisibility property in \( \mathbb{C}[n] \) and \( \mathbb{F}_p[n] \), remark that in

\[
\binom{n}{p'} \binom{n}{q'} \binom{n}{r'}
\]

with \( p' + q' + r' = 3n - s \), at least one of \( p', q', r' \) is \( \geq n - \left\lceil \frac{s}{2} \right\rceil \). 

\( \square \)
Proposition 4.2.4.7. For $d - \wp + 1 \leq t \leq d$, the coefficient of each monomial $x^i$ in $Q_t$ is of the form

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^{(\text{const}) \choose 3} g_{\nu}^n P_{\nu}(n)$$

(4.34)

where $g_{\nu} \in \mathbb{C}$ are constants (independent of $n$), and $P_{\nu}(n)$ are polynomials of degree $\leq d - t < \wp$, which are divisible by

$$\left(\frac{n}{n - \lceil \frac{2t}{3} \rceil}\right).$$

If $g$ can be written as sum of powers with integer coefficients and $\wp$ is a prime number, the same is true for the reduction of $Q_t$ mod $\wp$.

Proof. $Q_t$ is the coefficient of $c^t$ in

$$(-24) \sum_{1 \leq i < j < k \leq \text{const}} I(cx + y, m_i, m_j, m_k)^n(cx + y)m_im_jm_k$$

(4.35)

(cf. (29)), so we may apply Lemma 4.2.4.6 with $s = t$ and $s = t - 1$. 

Definition 4.2.4.8. For $d - \wp + 1 \leq t \leq d$, we put

$$R_t := \frac{Q_t}{\left(\frac{n}{n - \lceil \frac{2t}{3} \rceil}\right)}.$$  

(4.36)

Proof of Proposition 4.2.4.3 (for $d = 3n + 1$). Let const $= 9$ and consider

$$g = m_1^d + \cdots + m_9^d$$

with

$$m_1 = x_1 + 3x_2 + 9x_3 \quad m_4 = x_1 + 6x_2 - 10x_3 \quad m_7 = -3x_2 + 2x_3$$
$$m_2 = -10x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 \quad m_5 = 4x_1 - 8x_2 - 10x_3 \quad m_8 = 8x_1 - 4x_2 - 4x_3$$
$$m_3 = 8x_1 + 4x_2 + 6x_3 \quad m_6 = -3x_1 + 7x_2 - 4x_3 \quad m_9 = -10x_1 + 4x_2 + 6x_3.$$

For $\wp = 11$ we perform our construction with $x = x_1$ and two different values for $y$, namely $y_1 = x_2$ and $y_2 = x_3$. We obtain 22 quartics
4.2. PROOF OF RATIONALITY

Let us turn to the case $d = 3n + 2$. The whole procedure is similar in this case. If we take $K = 2n + 5$ Lemma 4.2.4.2, Proposition 4.2.4.5, Lemma 4.2.4.6 and Proposition 4.2.4.7 remain true as stated and Definition 4.2.4.8 still makes sense.

Proof of Proposition 4.2.4.3 (for $d = 3n + 2$). Let $\text{const} = 9$ and consider

$$g = m_1^d + \cdots + m_{\text{const}}^d$$

with $m_i$ as above.

For $\varphi = 19$ we perform our construction with $x = x_1$ and three different values for $y$, namely $y_1 = x_2$, $y_2 = x_3$ and $y_3 = x_2 + x_3$. We obtain 57 octics $R_{d}^{y_1}, \ldots, R_{d-18}^{y_1}, R_{d}^{y_2}, \ldots, R_{d-18}^{y_2}, R_{d}^{y_3}, \ldots, R_{d-18}^{y_3}$. By Lemma 4.2.4.4 and Proposition 4.2.4.5 these octics are in the image of $S_d|\mathbb{P}(L_\mathcal{T}+\mathcal{C}_g)$ if

$$d - 18 \geq K \iff 3n + 2 - 18 \geq 2n + 5 \iff n \geq 21.$$ 

The coefficients of the $R_j^y$ from a 45 $\times$ 57 matrix $M(n)$ with entries of the form $\sum_{y=1}^{84} e_y^o P_y(n)$ by Proposition 4.2.4.7. Modulo 19 this matrix becomes periodic in $n$ with period $19 \cdot 18 = 342$. With a computer algebra program it is straightforward to check that all these matrices have full rank 45. A Macaulay2 script doing this can be found at [BvB08-1a]. This proves the claim for $d = 3n + 2$.

4.2.5 Sections of principal bundles and proof of rationality

We will now show how to conclude the proof in the case $d = 3n + 1$. We make some comments on the case $d = 3n + 2$ when they are in order, but otherwise
leave the obvious modifications to the reader. Let \((P\,V(4))_{vs} \subset P\,V(4)\) be the open subset of very stable points with respect to the action of \(\bar{G}\) and the \(\bar{G}\)-linearized line bundle \(O(3)\) (very stable means stable with trivial stabilizer). Now the essential point is

**Proposition 4.2.5.1.** The quotient morphism

\[(P\,V(4))_{vs} \to (P\,V(4))_{vs}/\bar{G}\]

is a principal \(\bar{G}\)-bundle in the Zariski topology.

**Proof.** See [Shep], Prop. 2. This holds also true with \(V(4)\) replaced with \(V(8)\). \(\square\)

It follows that this \(\bar{G}\)-bundle has a section defined generically which we will denote by \(\sigma_4\).

**Proof of Theorem 4.1.0.1.** Consider the graph

\[X = \{(g, \bar{g}, f) \mid \pi_{LS}(g) = \bar{g}, S_d(g) = f\} \subset P\,V(d) \times P(V(d)/L_S) \times P\,V(4)\]

and the diagram

\[\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{1:1} & P\,V(d) \\
\downarrow{pr_{23}} & & \downarrow{}
\end{array}\]

\[\begin{array}{ccc}
P(V(d)/L_S) \times P\,V(4) & \xrightarrow{S_d} & P\,V(4)
\end{array}\]

\[X \xrightarrow{pr_{23}} P(V(d)/L_S) \times P\,V(4) \xrightarrow{S_d} P\,V(4).\]

By Proposition 4.2.4.3 the projection \(pr_{23}\) is dominant. It follows then from Remark 4.2.3.2 that \(X\) is birational to a vector bundle over \(P(V(d)/L_S) \times P\,V(4)\) and hence also over \(P\,V(4)\). After replacing \(\sigma_4\) by a translate, we can assume that \(\sigma_4\) meets an open set \(U \subset P\,V(4)\) over which this vector bundle is trivial. Since \(\bar{G}\) acts generically freely on \(P\,V(4)\), we can pull back the above vector bundle structure via \(\sigma_4\) and obtain that \(P\,V(d)/\bar{G}\) is birational to \(P\,V(4)/\bar{G} \times \mathbb{P}^N\) with \(N = \dim V(d) - \dim V(4)\). If \(d \geq 37\) as in Proposition 4.2.4.3, then certainly \(N \geq 8\) and since \((P\,V(4)/\bar{G}) \times \mathbb{P}^8\) is rational, \(P\,V(d)/\bar{G}\) is rational. In the case \(d = 3n + 2\) the same argument works since the space of octics is also stably rational of level 8. This proves Theorem 4.1.0.1. \(\square\)
4.3 Another proof for the dominance of $S_d$

In this section we give another proof of the dominance of $S_d$ which illustrates the usefulness of writing forms as sums of powers of linear forms nicely.

4.3.1 Configurations of lines and Scorza map

Let us recall the main properties of the Scorza map

\[
S_4 : \mathbb{P} V(4) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P} V(4)
\]

\[
S_4(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) := (\alpha \beta \gamma)(\alpha \beta \delta)(\alpha \gamma \delta)(\beta \gamma \delta) \alpha_x \beta_x \gamma_x \delta_x
\]

which we will use. If $[a] = [(a_1, a_2, a_3)] \in \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ is a point in $\mathbb{P}^2$ with homogeneous coordinates $a_1, a_2, a_3,$ and $f \in \mathbb{P} V(4)$ is a quartic, then

\[
P_a(f) := \sum_{i=1}^{3} a_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}
\]

is the first polar of $f$ with respect to the point $[a]$. It is a cubic curve passing through the points of tangency with the quartic $f$ of lines passing through the point $[a]$. The geometric interpretation of the Scorza map is as follows: It assigns to a general plane quartic $f$ the quartic $S_4(f)$ consisting of those points $[a]$ of $\mathbb{P}^2$ such that the first polar of $f$ with respect to $[a]$ is an equianharmonic cubic.

One has the following fundamental theorem (cf. [D-K], section 7, for a proof).

**Theorem 4.3.1.1.** The Scorza map $S_4$ is a dominant rational map of degree 36 from the space of plane quartics to itself. More precisely, for a general quartic $f$ the image $S_4(f)$ carries naturally an even theta-characteristic $\vartheta_{\text{Scorza}}$, and the rational map from the moduli space $\mathcal{M}_3$ of curves of genus 3 to $\mathcal{M}_3^{\text{rev}}$, the moduli space of genus 3 curves with an even theta-characteristic

\[
\mathcal{M}_3 \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_3^{\text{rev}},
\]

given by sending $f$ to $(S_4(f), \vartheta_{\text{Scorza}})$, is a birational isomorphism.

Let us go back to the general degree 4 covariant $S_d : V(d) \rightarrow V(4)$. As we saw, it is hard to calculate the values of $S_d$ on a general homogeneous form $f$ of degree $d$ without knowing the entire expression of $S_d$ as a polynomial
in the coefficients $A_i$, which is awkward. Recall, however, that one can work
directly with the symbolic expression if one writes $f$ as a linear combination
of $d$-th powers of linear forms:

$$f = \lambda_1 l_1^d + \cdots + \lambda_N l_N^d,$$

some $N \in \mathbb{N}$.

We recall that if

$$l_i = l_i^{(1)} x_1 + l_i^{(2)} x_2 + l_i^{(3)} x_3, \quad i = 1, \ldots, N$$

and if one writes

$$l_i = (l_i^{(1)}, l_i^{(2)}, l_i^{(3)}),$$

then, instead of the vectors of symbolic variables $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$, one may substitute vectors

$$l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p, \quad i, j, k, p \in \{1, \ldots, N\}$$

of complex numbers into the expression for $S_d$, to obtain a homogeneous
degree 4 form in $x_1, x_2, x_3$, which we write as

$$S_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p).$$

Then we saw

**Lemma 4.3.1.2.** We have

$$S_d(f) = \sum \lambda_i \lambda_j \lambda_k \lambda_p S_d(l_i, l_j, l_k, l_p).$$

The right-hand sum runs over all $(i, j, k, p) \in \{1, \ldots, N\}^4$.

To make use of this, we require

**Lemma 4.3.1.3.** A general quartic form $f \in V(4)$ can, after projective change of coordinates, be written as

$$f = x_1^4 + x_2^4 + x_3^4 + (ax_1 + bx_2)^4 + (cx_1 + dx_3)^4 + (ex_2 + fx_3)^4,$$

where $a, b, c, d, e, f$ are complex scalars.
Proof. If we denote by $Y \subset \mathbb{P}(V(4))$ the subvariety which is the closure of the image of $\mathbb{C}^6 \to \mathbb{P}(V(4))$, $(a, b, c, d, e, f) \mapsto [f]$, then one has to show that $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \cdot Y$ has dimension 14, so is all of $\mathbb{P}(V(4))$. For this it is sufficient to exhibit a point $y \in Y$ such that the set of $g \in \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ with $g \cdot y \in Y$ is finite (so the fibre of $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \times Y \to \mathbb{P}(V(4))$ over $y$ is finite), which one checks by explicit computation with e.g. Macaulay 2.

\[\text{Proposition 4.3.1.4.} \quad \text{The rational map } S_d \quad S_d : \mathbb{P}V(d) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}V(4)\]
is dominant for all $d = 3m + 1$ with $m \geq 1$.

\text{Proof.} By Lemma 4.3.1.3 we may write a general $f \in V(4)$ as

\[f = L_1^4 + L_2^4 + L_3^4 + L_{12}^4 + L_{13}^4 + L_{23}^4,\]

where the $L$'s are linear forms whose zero sets in $\mathbb{P}^2$ form a hexagon which looks as follows:

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (0,0) -- (3,0) -- (3,3) -- (0,3) -- cycle;
\fill (1.5,1.5) circle (2pt);
\fill (0,0) circle (2pt);
\fill (3,0) circle (2pt);
\fill (3,3) circle (2pt);
\fill (0,3) circle (2pt);
\node at (1.5,1.5) {$\bullet$};
\node at (0,0) {$L_{12} = 0$};
\node at (3,0) {$L_2 = 0$};
\node at (3,3) {$L_1 = 0$};
\node at (0,3) {$L_3 = 0$};
\node at (1.5,1.5) {$L_{13} = 0$};
\node at (1.5,1.5) {$L_{23} = 0$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

We will prove that, for general $f$, $S_4(f)$ is also in the image of $S_d$ by exhibiting an explicit preimage.

Associated with $L$'s we have their vectors of components with respect to $x_1$, $x_2$, $x_3$ which we will write

\[S := \{L_1, L_2, L_3, L_{12}, L_{13}, L_{23}\},\]

and we will regard $S$ as an ordered set with the indicated total order ($L_1$ being the smallest and $L_{23}$ being the greatest element). Looking back at the definition of the Clebsch invariant $I$, we can define complex scalars

\[I(A, B, C, D), \quad \text{for } A, B, C, D \in S.\]
For \( A, B \in S \) two unequal elements, we write \([A, B]\) for the complex scalar which is obtained from plugging into \( I \) the elements from the complement \( S \setminus \{A, B\} \) in the order in which they occur in \( S \).

Then only

\[
[L_3, L_{12}], [L_2, L_{13}], [L_1, L_{23}], [L_2, L_3], [L_1, L_3], [L_1, L_2]
\]

are different from zero. Thus for the value \( S_4(f) \) of the Scorza map on \( f \) we obtain

\[
S_4(f) = 24 \cdot ([L_3, L_{12}]L_1L_2L_13L_{23} + [L_2, L_{13}]L_1L_3L_{12}L_{23} + [L_1, L_{23}]L_2L_3L_{12}L_{13} + [L_2, L_3]L_1L_{12}L_{13}L_{23} + [L_1, L_2]L_3L_{12}L_{13}L_{23})\, .
\]

We define

\[
\begin{align*}
    g_1 & := [L_1, L_3][L_1, L_2], \\
    g_2 & := [L_1, L_2][L_2, L_3], \\
    g_3 & := [L_2, L_3][L_1, L_3], \\
    g_{12} & := [L_1, L_2][L_3, L_{12}], \\
    g_{13} & := [L_1, L_3][L_2, L_{13}], \\
    g_{23} & := [L_2, L_3][L_1, L_{23}],
\end{align*}
\]

Look at

\[
g := (g_1)^{m-1}L_1^d + (g_2)^{m-1}L_2^d + (g_3)^{m-1}L_3^d + (g_{12})^{m-1}L_{12}^d + (g_{13})^{m-1}L_{13}^d + (g_{23})^{m-1}L_{23}^d .
\]

Using Lemma 4.3.1.2 we obtain

\[
S_d(g) = 24 \cdot \left( (g_1g_2g_{12}g_{13}g_{23})^{m-1}[L_3, L_{12}]^mL_1L_2L_13L_{23} + (g_1g_3g_{12}g_{13})^{m-1}[L_2, L_{13}]^mL_1L_3L_{12}L_{23} + (g_2g_3g_{12}g_{13})^{m-1}[L_1, L_{23}]^mL_2L_3L_{12}L_{13} + (g_1g_2g_{13}g_{23})^{m-1}[L_2, L_3]^mL_1L_{12}L_{13}L_{23} + (g_2g_1g_{13}g_{23})^{m-1}[L_1, L_3]^mL_2L_{12}L_{13}L_{23} + (g_3g_1g_{12}g_{23})^{m-1}[L_1, L_2]^mL_3L_{12}L_{13}L_{23} \right) .
\]
and thus
\[
S_d(g) = ([L_3, L_{12}][L_2, L_{13}][L_1, L_{23}]
\cdot [L_1, L_2]^2[L_1, L_3]^2[L_2, L_3]^2)^{m-1} \cdot S_4(f).
\]

Therefore, for generic \( f \), \( S_4(f) \) is in the image of \( S_d \), which proves the dominance of \( S_d \) in view of Theorem 4.3.1.1. \( \square \)
Chapter 5

The rationality of some moduli spaces of plane curves of small degree

5.1 Introduction

In this chapter we prove an analogue of the classical Clebsch-Gordan formula (which deals with the group $\text{SL}_2(\mathbb{C})$) for $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ (Theorem 5.2.1.1). This allows one to obtain explicit matrix representatives for all $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant bilinear maps $U \otimes V \rightarrow W$ ($U, V, W$ finite dimensional $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representations) and to treat them in an algorithmically efficient way. In subsection 5.3 we introduce further computational techniques, based on writing a homogeneous polynomial as a sum of powers of linear forms and interpolation, which apply to a special class of maps $U \otimes V \rightarrow W$ that are ubiquitous in applications. Applications are Theorem 5.4.2.2, and in particular Theorem 5.4.1.3 where, combining the methods of this Chapter with those of Chapter 4, we prove the rationality of the moduli spaces of plane curves of degree $d$ for all $d$ with the possible exception of 15 values of $d$ for which rationality remains unsettled.

5.2 A Clebsch-Gordan formula for $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$
5.2.1 The elementary maps

Let \( G := \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) and denote as usual by \( V(a, b) \) the irreducible \( G \)-module whose highest weight has numerical labels \( a, b \) where \( a, b \) are non-negative integers. We put

\[
S^a := \text{Sym}^a(\mathbb{C}^3), \quad D^b := \text{Sym}^b(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee
\]

and denote by \( e_1, e_2, e_3 \) and \( x_1, x_2, x_3 \) dual bases in \( \mathbb{C}^3 \) resp. \((\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee\) so that \( V(a, b) \) can be realized concretely as the kernel of the map

\[
\Delta := \sum_{i=1}^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial e_i} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} : S^a \otimes D^b \rightarrow S^{a-1} \otimes D^{b-1}; \tag{5.1}
\]

we will always view \( V(a, b) \) in this way in the following. Our purpose is to determine an explicit basis of the \( G \)-equivariant maps

\[
\text{Hom}_G(V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d), V(e, f))
\]

(if \( V(e, f) \) is a subrepresentation of \( V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d) \)). To this end we define the following elementary maps:

\[
\alpha : (S^a \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^c \otimes D^d) \rightarrow (S^{a-1} \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^{c-1} \otimes D^{d-1}) \tag{5.2}
\]

\[
\alpha := \sum_{i=1}^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial e_i} \otimes \text{id} \otimes \text{id} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}
\]

\[
\beta : (S^a \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^c \otimes D^d) \rightarrow (S^a \otimes D^{b-1}) \otimes (S^{c-1} \otimes D^d) \tag{5.3}
\]

\[
\beta := \sum_{i=1}^3 \text{id} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial e_i} \otimes \text{id}
\]

\[
\vartheta : (S^a \otimes S^c) \otimes (D^{b+d}) \rightarrow (S^{a-1} \otimes S^{c-1}) \otimes D^{b+d+1} \tag{5.4}
\]

\[
\vartheta := \sum_{\sigma \in \mathfrak{S}_3} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \frac{\partial}{\partial e_{\sigma(1)}} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial e_{\sigma(2)}} \otimes x_{\sigma(3)}
\]
\( \omega : S^{a+c} \otimes (D^b \otimes D^d) \rightarrow S^{a+c+1} \otimes (D^{b-1} \otimes D^{d-1}) \) \hspace{1cm} (5.5)

Note that an easier way of defining \( \vartheta \) and \( \omega \) is by saying that \( \vartheta \) is multiplication by the determinant \( x_1 \wedge x_2 \wedge x_3 \) and \( \omega \) multiplication by its inverse \( e_1 \wedge e_2 \wedge e_3 \).

The theorem we want to prove is the following.

**Theorem 5.2.1.1.** Suppose that \( V(e, f) \) occurs in the decomposition of \( V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d) \) into irreducible constituents. Define integers

\[
s := \frac{(a + c - e) + 2(b + d - f)}{3}, \quad t := \frac{(a + c - e) - (b + d - f)}{3}.
\]

Let \( \pi_{e, f} \) be the equivariant projection from \( S^e \otimes D^f \) onto \( V(e, f) \). Then a basis of \( \text{Hom}_G(V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d), V(e, f)) \) is given by the following maps:

(A) In case \( t \geq 0 \) the (restrictions to \( V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d) \)) of the maps of the form

\[
\pi_{e, f} \circ \vartheta^t \circ \beta^{s-t} \circ \alpha^i
\]

where \( i \) is an arbitrary non-negative integer which is subject to the following set of inequalities

(A.1) \( i \leq a, \ i \leq d \).
(A.2) \( i \leq s, \ s - i \leq b, \ s - i \leq c \).
(A.3) \( a - i \geq t, \ c - (s - i) \geq t \).

(B) In case \( t < 0 \) the (restrictions to \( V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d) \)) of the maps of the form

\[
\pi_{e, f} \circ \omega^{-t} \circ \beta^{s+t-i} \circ \alpha^i
\]

where \( i \) is again an otherwise arbitrary non-negative integer constrained only by the inequalities

(B.1) \( i \leq a, \ i \leq d \).
(B.2) \( i \leq s + t, s + t - i \leq b, s + t - i \leq c \).
(B.3) \( b - (s + t - i) \geq -t, d - i \geq -t \).

A few explanatory remarks are in order.

Remark 5.2.1.2. When writing a composition like \( \pi_{e,f} \circ \vartheta^t \circ \beta^{s-i} \circ \alpha^i \), we suppress the obvious multiplication maps from the notation: after the map \( \beta^{s-i} \circ \alpha^i : (S^a \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^c \otimes D^d) \rightarrow (S^{a-i} \otimes D^{b-(s-i)}) \otimes (S^{c-(s-i)} \otimes D^{d-i}) \) we perform the multiplication map
\[
(S^{a-i} \otimes D^{b-(s-i)}) \otimes (S^{c-(s-i)} \otimes D^{d-i}) \rightarrow S^{a-i} \otimes S^{c-(s-i)} \otimes D^{b+d-s}
\]
and apply \( \vartheta^t \) to land in \( S^{a-i-t} \otimes S^{c-(s-i)-t} \otimes D^{b+d-s+t} \), before applying the equivariant projection \( \pi_{e,f} \) we multiply again to map to
\[
S^{a+c-s-2t} \otimes D^{b+d-s+t}
\]
which one, looking back at the definition of \( t \) and \( s \), identifies as \( S^e \otimes D^f \).
The composition \( \pi_{e,f} \circ \omega^{-t} \circ \beta^{s+t-i} \circ \alpha^i \) has to be interpreted in a similar fashion. This simplification of notation should cause no confusion.

Remark 5.2.1.3. The definition of the integers \( s \) and \( t \) and the inequalities (A.1)-(A.3) and (B.1)-(B.3) may seem rather unmotivated at first glance, but, in fact, they have a very simple-minded meaning: (A.1) means that one can apply \( i \)-times the map \( \alpha \) without obtaining the zero-map for positivity reasons (because the target is \( (S^{a-i} \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^c \otimes D^{d-i}) \)); in a similar fashion, (A.2) and (A.3) mean that application of \( \beta^{s-i} \) resp. \( \vartheta^t \) does not land us in spaces which are zero. (B.1), (B.2) resp. (B.3) have the same meaning in case \( t < 0 \) for the maps \( \alpha^i, \beta^{s+t-i} \) resp. \( \omega^{-t} \). The numbers \( s \) and \( t \) are then chosen to eventually map to the space \( S^e \otimes D^f \); their meaning (including the fact that they are indeed integers) will become clear in the next section when we interpret them in terms of Young diagrams.

The proof of Theorem 5.2.1.1 will occupy the next two sections. In the next subsection we prove that in both cases \( t \geq 0 \) and \( t < 0 \), the number of maps given in the Theorem equals the multiplicity of \( V(e,f) \) in \( V(a,b) \otimes V(c,d) \); we do it by directly relating the maps to the combinatorial data of the Littlewood Richardson rule. In subsection 5.1.3 we prove the linear independence of the maps in the Theorem, in particular that they are all non-zero.
5.2.2 Relation to the Littlewood Richardson rule

It is well known that isomorphism classes of irreducible $GL_n(\mathbb{C})$-modules correspond bijectively to $n$-tuples of integers $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n)$ with $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_n$ via associating to such a representation its highest weight $\lambda_1\epsilon_1 + \cdots + \lambda_n\epsilon_n$ where $\epsilon_i$ is the $i$-th coordinate function of the standard diagonal torus in $GL_n(\mathbb{C})$. The space of the corresponding irreducible representation will be denoted $\Sigma^\lambda(\mathbb{C}^n)$. Here $\Sigma^\lambda$ is called the Schur functor (cf. [Fu-Ha]). If all $\lambda_i$ are non-negative, one associates to $\lambda$ the corresponding Young diagram whose number of boxes in its $i$-th row is $\lambda_i$; $\lambda$ will often be identified with this Young diagram. For example,

$$
\Sigma^{1,1,1}(\mathbb{C}^3) \leftrightarrow \Lambda^3(\mathbb{C}^3) \leftrightarrow \left\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}\right.
$$

We list some properties of the Schur functors for future use:

- One has $\Sigma^\lambda(\mathbb{C}^n) \simeq \Sigma^\mu(\mathbb{C}^n)$ as $SL_n(\mathbb{C})$-representations if and only if $\lambda_i - \mu_i =: h$ is constant for all $i$. In fact, in this case
  $$
  \Sigma^\lambda(\mathbb{C}^n) \simeq \Sigma^\mu(\mathbb{C}^n) \otimes (\Lambda^n(\mathbb{C}^n))^{\otimes h}.
  $$

- $\Sigma^{(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n)}(\mathbb{C}^n) \vee \simeq \Sigma^{(-\lambda_n, -\lambda_{n-1}, \ldots, -\lambda_1)}(\mathbb{C}^n)$.

- The representation $V(a, b)$ of $G = SL_3(\mathbb{C})$ is isomorphic to $\Sigma^{(a+b, b, 0)}(\mathbb{C}^3)$.

- For a Young diagram $\lambda$ with more than $n$ rows one has $\Sigma^\lambda(\mathbb{C}^n) = 0$ by definition.

The Littlewood-Richardson rule to decompose $\Sigma^\lambda \otimes \Sigma^\mu$ into irreducible factors where $\lambda, \mu$ are Young diagrams (cf. [Fu-Ha], §A.1) says the following (in this notation we suppress the space which the Schur functors are applied to, since it plays no role): label each box of $\mu$ with the number of the row it belongs to. Then expand the Young diagram $\lambda$ by adding the boxes of $\mu$ to the rows of $\lambda$ subject to the following rules:

(a) The boxes with labels $\leq i$ of $\mu$ together with the boxes of $\lambda$ form again a Young diagram;
(b) No column contains boxes of $\mu$ with equal labels.

(c) When the integers in the boxes added are listed from right to left and from top down, then, for any $0 \leq s \leq (\text{number of boxes of } \mu)$, the first $s$ entries of the list satisfy: each label $l$ ($1 \leq l \leq (\text{number of rows of } \mu) - 1$) occurs at least as many times as the label $l + 1$.

We will call this configuration of boxes (together with the labels) a $\mu$-expansion of $\lambda$. Then the multiplicity of $\Sigma^\nu$ in $\Sigma^\lambda \otimes \Sigma^\mu$ is the number of times the Young diagram $\nu$ can be obtained by expanding $\lambda$ by $\mu$ according to the above rules, forgetting the labels.

For $\Sigma^{(2, 1, 0)} \otimes \Sigma^{(2, 1, 0)}$ the following expansions are possible:

\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & & 2 \\
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & & 2 \\
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 2 \\
2 & & 2 \\
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & & 2 \\
\end{array}
\end{align*}

Hence

\[ V(1, 1) \otimes V(1, 1) = V(2, 2) \oplus V(3, 0) \oplus V(0, 3) \oplus 2 V(1, 1) \oplus V(0, 0) . \]

A typical $\mu$-expansion of $\lambda$ we are interested in will look like this (here $\lambda = (5, 2, 0)$, $\mu = (5, 4, 0)$; $\nu = (7, 6, 3)$ is depicted which yields the same $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-representation as $(4, 3, 0)$):

\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & 1 & 2 & 2 \\
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\
2 & 1 & 2 & 2 \\
\end{array}
\end{align*}
Reverting to labelling by highest weights, we consider the case \( V(1, 3) \subset V(3, 2) \otimes V(1, 4) \) here.

We turn to the proof of Theorem 5.2.1.1 now. We put \( \lambda := (a + b, b, 0) \) and \( \mu := (c + d, d, 0) \), and let \( \nu := (\nu_1, \nu_2, \nu_3) \) be the unique Young diagram corresponding to \( V(e, f) \) in the \( \mu \)-expansions of \( \lambda \). We want to prove:

**Proposition 5.2.2.1.** In the cases \( t \geq 0 \) resp. \( t < 0 \) there are natural bijections between the sets of non-negative integers \( i \) satisfying the inequalities (A.1)-(A.3) resp. (B.1)-(B.3) and the set of \( \mu \)-expansions of \( \lambda \) of type \( \nu \).

To begin with, we remark that

the number \( s \) in Theorem 5.2.1.1 is the number of boxes in the third row of \( \nu \).

In fact, \( 3\nu_3 + f + (e + f) \) is equal to the total number of boxes in \( \nu \) which is \( 2b + a + 2d + c \) which proves the preceding claim. It follows in particular that \( s \) is a non-negative integer, and \( t = s - (b + d - f) \) is then an integer, too. There is a more useful interpretation of \( t \):

The number \( t \) is the difference of the number of 1’s in the second row of each \( \mu \)-expansion of \( \lambda \) of type \( \nu \) and the number of 2’s in the third row of the \( \mu \)-expansion of \( \lambda \) of type \( \nu \).

This is so because \( s - b + f \) is the number of boxes of \( \mu \) added to the second row of \( \lambda \) in order to obtain \( \nu \); and \( d \) is the total number of 2’s in the \( \mu \)-expansion of \( \lambda \) of type \( \nu \).

We need an auxiliary concept before proceeding:

**Definition 5.2.2.2.** Suppose \( t \geq 0 \). Let \( i \) be a non-negative integer satisfying \( i \leq s \) and \( i \leq d \). By the pseudo-expansion of \( \lambda \) by \( \mu \) of type \( \nu \) associated to \( i \) (in symbols: \( \mathcal{E}(i) \)) we mean the following partially labelled configuration of boxes. Add the boxes of \( \mu \) to the Young diagram of \( \lambda \) to obtain the Young diagram of \( \nu \). Then label the added boxes of \( \mu \) in the following way: in the boxes of \( \mu \) in the third row one writes first (reading from left to right) a sequence of \( s - i \) 1’s followed by a sequence of \( i \) 2’s. The boxes of \( \mu \) in the first row of \( \nu \) all receive the label 1. The added boxes of \( \mu \) in the second row of \( \nu \) are labelled (reading again from left to right) by a sequence of \( i + t \) 1’s followed by sequence of 2’s until all boxes of \( \mu \) in the second row are filled.
CHAPTER 5. SMALL DEGREE PLANE CURVES

- Suppose \( t < 0 \). Let \( i \) be a non-negative integer satisfying \( i \leq d + t \) and \( i \leq s + t \). By the pseudo-expansion of \( \lambda \) by \( \mu \) of type \( \nu \) associated to \( i \) (in symbols: \( \mathcal{E}(i) \)) we mean the following partially labelled configuration of boxes. Add again the boxes of \( \mu \) to the Young diagram of \( \lambda \) to obtain the Young diagram of \( \nu \) and label the added boxes of \( \mu \) as follows: the boxes of \( \mu \) in the second row of \( \nu \) receive as labels (read from left to right) a sequence of \( i \) 1’s followed by a sequence of 2’s to fill all the remaining boxes of \( \mu \) in the second row. The boxes of \( \mu \) in the first row of \( \nu \) are all labelled with 1, and the boxes of \( \mu \) in the third row of \( \nu \) are labelled (reading from left to right) by \( s - (i - t) \) 1’s followed by \( i - t \) 2’s to fill the remaining boxes of \( \mu \) in the last row of \( \nu \).

Note first that this definition makes sense because of the inequalities imposed on \( i \) in each case: in case \( t \geq 0 \) we have \( 0 \leq s - i \leq s \) and \( 0 \leq i \leq s \) and \( s \) is the number of boxes in the last row of \( \nu \), so the labelling of the boxes of \( \mu \) in the third row of \( \nu \) is well-defined; now the number of boxes of \( \mu \) in the second row of \( \nu \) is \( f + s - b \), so to be able to carry out the labelling described above we should have \( 0 \leq i + t \leq f + s - b \). But \( f + s - b - t = d \) by definition, so the labelling is well-defined because \( i \leq d \) by assumption. It also follows that there are then \( d \) 2’s in total among the labels of \( \mathcal{E}(i) \) (namely, \( f + s - b - (i + t) + i = d \)) and consequently \( c + d \) 1’s as it should be.

For \( t < 0 \), note that we can fill in the boxes of \( \mu \) in the third row of \( \nu \) in the way described since \( 0 \leq s - (i - t) \leq s \) and \( 0 \leq (i - t) \leq s \) (since \( 0 \leq i \leq s + t \) and \( t < 0 \)); and there are again \( f + s - b \) boxes of \( \mu \) added to the second row of \( \nu \), and \( 0 \leq i \leq f + s - b \) is implied by the inequality \( 0 \leq i \leq d + t = (f + s - b - t) + t \). In this case we have again that there are \( d \) labels 2 in \( \mathcal{E}(i) \) in total (\( i - t \) 2’s in the last row, \( f + s - b - i \) 2’s in the second row), and consequently \( c + d \) labels 1.

This being said, we will prove Proposition 5.2.2.1 by setting up the bijections as follows:

If \( t \geq 0 \) then we associate to \( i \) subject to (A.1)-(A.3) the pseudo-expansion \( \mathcal{E}(i) \) of the first part of Definition 5.2.2.2.

If \( t < 0 \), then we let correspond to \( i \) subject to (B.1)-(B.3) the pseudo-expansion \( \mathcal{E}(i) \) of the second part of Definition 5.2.2.2.
It remains to see that the inequalities (A.1)-(A.3) resp. (B.1)-(B.3) are exactly equivalent to the pseudo-expansions $\mathcal{E}(i)$ being $\mu$-expansions of $\lambda$ of type $\nu$ which confirm to the Littlewood Richardson rule. This is proven in the following Lemma.

**Lemma 5.2.2.3.** Let $\mathcal{E}(i)$ be the pseudo-expansion of $\lambda$ by $\mu$ of type $\nu$ associated to $i$. Then $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is an admissible Littlewood Richardson expansion of $\lambda$ by $\mu$ of type $\nu$ if and only if for $t \geq 0$ inequalities (A.1)-(A.3) hold, and for $t < 0$, (B.1)-(B.3) hold. More precisely:

(A) Suppose $t \geq 0$. The inequalities (A.1)-(A.3) can be interpreted in terms of the pseudo-expansion $\mathcal{E}(i)$ as follows:

(A.1) The inequality $\boxed{i \leq a}$ is implied by the stronger inequality $i \leq a - t$ (A.3) and will be discussed as item (A.3). $\boxed{i \leq d}$ is used for the notion of pseudo-expansion to be well-defined (see above) and is true for any pseudo-expansion.

(A.2) $\boxed{i \leq s}$ was used for the definition of pseudo-expansion to be well-posed.

$s - i \leq b$ $\iff$ The number of 1’s in the third row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is less than or equal to $b$, the number of boxes in the second row of $\lambda$.

$s - i \leq c$ is implied by $c - (s - i) \geq t$ in (A.3).

(A.3) $\boxed{a - i \geq t}$ $\iff$ The number of 1’s in the second row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is less than or equal to $a$.

$c - (s - i) \geq t$ $\iff$ The number of 1’s in the first row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is greater than or equal to the number of 2’s in the second row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$.

Moreover, one remarks that in case (A) the assertion that the number of 1’s in the second row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is greater than or equal to the number of boxes $b$ of $\mu$ added to the second row of $\lambda$ for which there exists another box of $\mu$ that is added to the third row of $\lambda$ and is in the same column as $b$, is equivalent to the inequality $t + i \geq s - b$ which is implied by the inequality $s - i \leq b$ of (A.2) since $t \geq 0$.

(B) Suppose $t < 0$. The inequalities (B.1)-(B.3) can be interpreted in terms of the pseudo-expansion $\mathcal{E}(i)$ as follows:
(B.1) The inequality $i \leq a$ means that the number of 1’s in the second row of $E(i)$ is $\leq a$. The inequality $i \leq d$ is implied by the inequality $i \leq d + t$ to be discussed under item (B.3).

(B.2) $i \leq s + t$ is used for the definition of pseudo-expansion to be well-posed.

The inequality $s + t - i \leq b$ is implied by the inequality $b - (s + t - i) \geq -t$ to be discussed under item (B.3).

\[ s + t - i \leq c \iff \text{ The total number of 1's minus those in the last row of } E(i) \text{ is greater than or equal to the total number of 2's in } E(i). \]

(B.3) The inequality $b - (s + t - i) \geq -t$ is equivalent to saying that the number of 1’s in the second row of $E(i)$ is greater than or equal to the number of boxes $b$ of $\mu$ added to the second row of $\lambda$ for which there exists another box of $\mu$ that is added to the third row of $\lambda$ and is in the same column as $b$.

\[ d - i \geq -t \] was used for being able to define the notion of pseudo-expansion.

Moreover, one remarks that in case (B) the assertion that the number of 1’s in the first row of $E(i)$ is greater than or equal to the number of 2’s in the second row of $E(i)$ is equivalent to the inequality $c \geq s + 2t - i$ and this is implied by the inequality $c \geq s + t - i$ in (B.2) above since $t < 0$.

**Proof.** Before proving the assertions under (A) and (B), we show how they imply that a pseudo-expansion $E(i)$ is a Littlewood Richardson expansion if and only if (A.1)-(A.3) resp. (B.1)-(B.3) hold. Note that the interpretations of these inequalities given above under (A) resp. (B) obviously hold for a Littlewood Richardson expansion. Conversely, suppose $E(i)$ is a pseudo-expansion with $i$ satisfying (A.1)-(A.3) resp. (B.1)-(B.3). First we have to see that the boxes of $\lambda$ in $E(i)$ together with the boxes of $\mu$ with labels $\leq 1$ form again a Young diagram. In case (A) this follows from the definition of pseudo-expansion and the inequalities $s - i \leq b$ and $a - i \geq t$. In case (B) this follows from $i \leq a$ and $s + t - i \leq b$ since the number of ones in the third row is $s - (i - t)$ in this case. The assertion that the boxes of $\mu$ with labels $\leq 2$ together with the boxes of $\lambda$ form again a Young diagram is true by definition of pseudo-expansion in both cases.
Let us see next that no column in $E(i)$ can contain boxes with equal labels. In case (A) this follows from $s - i \leq b$ together with the remark after item (A.3) and $a - i \geq t$ (no 1’s in the same column). To see that there are no 2’s in the same column remark that $s \leq b + i + t$. In case (B) the assertion follows from $s + t - i \leq b$ together with $b - (s + t - i) \geq -t$ and finally $i \leq a$ (no 1’s in the same column). The fact that there are no 2’s in the same column follows since $s \leq b + i$ (since $b - (s + t - i) \geq -t$).

Finally we have to verify that if we read the string of 1’s and 2’s in $E(i)$ from right to left and from top down, then when we stop reading at an arbitrary point, we have always read at least as many 1’s as 2’s. In case (A) this is implied by $c - (s - i) \geq t$ and the inequality $s - i \leq c$; the latter means that the total number of 1’s minus the number of 1’s in the third row of $E(i)$ (which is $c + d - (s - i)$) is greater than or equal to the total number of 2’s in $E(i)$ which is $d$. In case (B) this follows from the remark after (B.3) and $s + t - i \leq c$.

It remains to prove the assertions under (A) and (B) of the Lemma. We consider case (A) first. We recall that the number of 1’s in the third row of $E(i)$ is $s - i$ and the number of 1’s in the second row of $E(i)$ is $i + t$. Then all the assertions are obvious except the interpretation of the inequality $c - (s - i) \geq t$ and the concluding remark after (A.3). Now the number of 1’s in the first row of $E(i)$ is $c + d - (s - i) - (i + t)$ and the number of 2’s in the second row is $s + f - b - (i + t)$. But

$$s + f - b - (i + t) \leq (c + d) - (s - i) - (i + t)$$

is certainly equivalent to

$$d - i \leq (c + d) - (s - i) - (i + t)$$

which is equivalent to $c - (s - i) \geq t$ as claimed.

The remark after (A.3) is seen by remarking that the number of boxes $b$ defined above is $s - b$ in this case.

We turn to the inequalities in case (B). Recall that there are $s - (i - t)$ 1’s in the third row of $E(i)$ in this case, and $i$ 1’s in the second row of $E(i)$. Most of the inequalities follow immediately from this. The inequality
$i \geq s - b$ expresses again the property that the number of 1’s in the second row is greater than or equal to the number of boxes $b$ in item (B.3), and is equivalent to $b - (s + t - i) \geq -t$.

The number of 1’s in the first row of $\mathcal{E}(i)$ is in this case $c + d - i - (s + t - i)$ and the number of 2’s in the second row is $f + s - b - i$, and

$$c + d - i - (s + t - i) \geq f + s - b - i$$

is equivalent to (since $f + s - b - t = d$)

$$c + d - s - 2t + i \geq d$$

which proves the assertion in the remark after (B.3).

It remains to consider $s + t - i \leq c$ in (B.2). In fact the total number of 1’s in $\mathcal{E}(i)$ minus the number of 1’s in the third row is equal to $c + d - (s - i + t)$ and the condition that this be greater than or equal to the total number of 2’s ($= d$) translates exactly into $s + t - i \leq c$.

With Lemma 5.2.2.3 we have proven Proposition 5.2.2.1 in full.

### 5.2.3 Linear independence of elementary maps

In this subsection we prove that the maps in Theorem 5.2.1.1 are linearly independent in both cases (A) and (B), thus concluding the proof of the Theorem. Note that the element $p_0 := (e_i^a \otimes x_3^b) \otimes (e_i^c \otimes x_4^d)$ is in the subspace $V(a, b) \otimes V(c, d) \subset (S^a \otimes D^b) \otimes (S^c \otimes D^d)$ by the definition of $\Delta$ in formula 5.1. Note also that the image of the map

$$\delta : S^{e-1} \otimes D^{f-1} \rightarrow S^e \otimes D^f, \quad \delta = \sum_{i=1}^{3} e_i \otimes x_i$$

is a complement to the subspace $V(e, f)$ in $S^e \otimes D^f$. It thus suffices to prove the following Lemma.

**Lemma 5.2.3.1.** In case (A) the polynomials

$$(\partial^i \circ \beta^{e-i} \circ \alpha^i)(p_0)$$

where $i$ ranges over the set of non-negative integers satisfying (A.1)-(A.3), are linearly independent in $(S^e \otimes D^f)/\text{im}(\delta)$.

In case (B) the polynomials

$$(\omega^{-t} \circ \beta^{e+t-i} \circ \alpha^i)(p_0)$$
where \( i \) ranges over the set of non-negative integers satisfying (B.1)-(B.3), are linearly independent in \((S^e \otimes D^f)/\text{im}(\delta)\).

**Proof.** In case (A) we compute

\[
(\vartheta^t \circ \beta^{s-i} \circ \alpha^i)(p_0) = (\text{nonzero constant}) \cdot e_1^{a-i-t} e_3^{c-s+i-t} \otimes x_3^{b-s+i} x_2 x_1^{d-i}
\]

which is in each case a non-zero monomial in \( S^e \otimes D^f \) (note also that all exponents are nonnegative), and in case (B) we obtain

\[
(\omega^{-t} \circ \beta^{s+t-i} \circ \alpha^i)(p_0) = (\text{nonzero constant}) \cdot e_1^{a-i} e_2^{-t} e_3^{c-s-t+i} \otimes x_3^{b-s+i} x_2^{d-i+t},
\]

a non-zero monomial in \( S^e \otimes D^f \). Each nonzero bihomogeneous polynomial in the subspace

\[
\text{im}(\delta) = (e_1 \otimes x_1 + e_2 \otimes x_2 + e_3 \otimes x_3) \cdot (S^e-1 \otimes D^{f-1}) \subset S^e \otimes D^f
\]

contains monomials (with nonzero coefficient) divisible by \( e_2 \otimes x_2 \). Since the preceding monomials in cases (A) resp. (B) are not divisible by \( e_2 \otimes x_2 \), a linear combination of them can be zero modulo \( \text{im}(\delta) \) only if this linear combination is already zero as a polynomial in \( S^e \otimes D^f \). But in both cases (A) and (B), the degrees of the above monomials with respect to the variable \( e_1 \) are pairwise distinct, so they cannot combine to zero nontrivially in \( S^e \otimes D^f \).

\[\square\]

### 5.3 Algorithms related to the double bundle method

#### 5.3.1 Matrix representatives for equivariant projections

To complete the picture, we will give in this section a method to compute the equivariant projection

\[
\pi_{e,f} : S^e \otimes D^f \to V(e, f).
\]

There are several ways of doing this, but we will here describe one that yields matrix representatives for this map explicitly and is most suitable algorithmically for the subsequent applications to curves.
For simplicity, we assume $e \leq f$. More generally, we will give a fast method to compute the $G$-equivariant map

$$
p : V(e, 0) \otimes V(0, f) \to V(e - i_1, f - i_1) \oplus \cdots \oplus V(e - i_m, f - i_m) \tag{5.6}
$$

$$
0 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_m \leq M := \min(e, f).
$$

We do this in two steps. First, we compute the projection

$$
\psi_k : S^e \otimes S^f \to S^k \otimes D^{f-e+k}
$$

$$
= V(k, f - e + k) \oplus \cdots \oplus V(1, f - e + 1) \oplus V(0, f - e),
$$

for $k = 0, \ldots, e$. In terms of the operator $\Delta$ in formula 5.1 we have $\psi_k = \Delta^{e-k}$. We choose random linear forms $u_1, \ldots, u_n$ in $e_1, e_2, e_3$ and random linear forms $v_1, \ldots, v_n$ in $x_1, x_2, x_3$ so that

$$
u^e_1, \ldots, u^e_n \in S^e, \quad v^f_1, \ldots, v^f_n \in D^f
$$

span $S^e$ resp. $D^f$. To compute $\psi_k$ it will thus suffice to compute $\Delta^{e-k}(u^e_i \otimes v^f_j)$. Let first be $u$ and $v$ linear forms in $e_1, e_2, e_3$ resp. $x_1, x_2, x_3$. We assume $v(u) \neq 0$ for otherwise $\Delta(u^e \otimes v^f) = 0$. We put

$$
U_1 := \frac{u}{v(u)}
$$

so that $v(U_1) = 1$ and complete $V_1 := v$ and $U_1$ to dual bases $U_1, U_2, U_3$ in $\mathbb{C}^3$ and $V_1, V_2, V_3$ in $(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$. Then

$$
\Delta(u^e \otimes v^f) = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial U_1} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial V_1} + \frac{\partial}{\partial U_2} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial V_2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial U_3} \otimes \frac{\partial}{\partial V_3} \right) (u^e \otimes v^f)
$$

$$
= f \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial U_1} ((v(u)U_1)^e) \otimes v^{f-1}
$$

$$
= v(u)^e \cdot f U_1^{e-1} \otimes v^{f-1}
$$

$$
= v(u)e \cdot f u^{e-1} \otimes v^{f-1}.
$$

Hence

$$
\psi_k(u^e_i \otimes v^f_j) = \Delta^{e-k}(u^e_i \otimes v^f_j) \quad \tag{5.7}
$$

$$
v_j(u_i)^{e-k} \cdot f \cdot \cdots \cdot (f - (e - k) + 1) \cdot e \cdot \cdots \cdot (e - (e - k) + 1) \cdot u^k_i \otimes v^{f-e+k}_j, \quad \tag{5.8}
$$
5.3. ALGORITHMS RELATED TO THE DOUBLE BUNDLE METHOD

Now, secondly, we give a method to compute

$$\pi_{a, b} : S^a \otimes D^b \to V(a, b) = \ker(\Delta) \subset S^a \otimes D^b.$$ 

Note that possibly precomposing with some iterates of $\Delta$ which can be computed by the preceding procedure - we get in this way a means to calculate maps $p$ of the form given in formula 5.6 quite quickly.

**Lemma 5.3.1.1.** One has

$$\pi_{a, b} = \sum_{j=0}^{N} \mu_j \delta^j \Delta^j$$

for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and certain $\mu_j \in \mathbb{Q}$.

**Proof.** Let us denote by $\pi_{a, b, i}$ the equivariant projection

$$\pi_{a, b, i} : S^a \otimes D^b \to V(a - i, b - i) \subset S^{a-i} \otimes D^{b-i}$$

so that $\pi_{a, b} = \pi_{a, b, 0}$. Look at the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S^a \otimes D^b & \xrightarrow{\Delta^i} & S^{a-i} \otimes D^{b-i} \\
\delta^i & & \pi_{a-i, b-i} \\
V(a - i, b - i) & \subset & S^{a-i} \otimes D^{b-i}
\end{array}
\]

By Schur’s lemma,

$$\pi_{a, b, i} = \lambda_i \delta^i \pi_{a-i, b-i} \Delta^i$$

for some nonzero constants $\lambda_i$. On the other hand,

$$\pi_{a, b} = \text{id} - \sum_{i=1}^{\min(a, b)} \pi_{a, b, i}.$$ 

Therefore, since the assertion of the Lemma holds trivially if one of $a$ or $b$ is zero, the general case follows by induction on $i$. 

Note that to compute the $\mu_j$ in the expression of $\pi_{a, b}$ in Lemma 5.3.1.1, it suffices to calculate the $\lambda_i$ in formula 5.9 which can be done by the rule

$$\frac{1}{\lambda_i} (e^a_{a-i} \otimes x_3^{b-i}) = (\pi_{a-i, b-i} \circ \Delta^i \circ \delta^i) (e^a_1 \otimes x_3^{b-i}).$$
Finally let 
\[ \chi = \sum_i \xi_i \delta^i \Delta^i \]
be a linear combination as the one in Lemma 5.3.1.1, considered as a map from \( S^a \otimes D^b \) to itself. To compute its value \( \chi(u^a \otimes v^b) \) fast (where \( u \) and \( v \) as before are linear forms in \( e_1, e_2, e_3 \) resp. \( x_1, x_2, x_3 \)) we recall that according to formula 5.7
\[ \delta^i \Delta^i(u^a \otimes v^b) = \delta^i \left( v(u)^i \frac{a!}{(a-i)!} \frac{b!}{(b-i)!} u^{a-i} \otimes v^{b-i} \right) \]
and we compute the bihomogeneous polynomial \( \chi(u^a \otimes v^b) \) by evaluating it in sufficiently many points \( p_k \in (\mathbb{C}^3)^{\vee}, q_l \in \mathbb{C}^3 \) and interpolation. In fact,
\[ \chi(u^a \otimes v^b)(p_k, q_l) = \sum_i \xi_i \left\{ (\delta(p_k, q_l))^i \cdot \left( v(u)^i \frac{a!}{(a-i)!} \frac{b!}{(b-i)!} u(p_k)^{a-i} v(q_l)^{b-i} \right) \right\}. \]

**Remark 5.3.1.2.** If we know how to compute an \( SL_3(\mathbb{C}) \)-equivariant bilinear map \( \psi : U \otimes V \to W \), in the sense say, that upon choosing bases \( u_1, \ldots, u_r \) in \( U \), \( v_1, \ldots, v_s \) in \( V \), \( w_1, \ldots, w_t \) in \( W \), we know the \( t \) matrices of size \( r \times s \)
\[ M^1, \ldots, M^t \]
given by
\[ (M^k)_{ij} := (w_k)^{\vee}(\psi(u_i, v_j)), \]
then the map
\[ \tilde{\psi} : W^{\vee} \otimes V \to U^{\vee}, \]
\[ \tilde{\psi}(l_W, v)(u) = l_W(\psi(u, v)) \]
\( l_W \in W^{\vee}, v \in V, u \in U \)
induced by \( \psi \) has a similar representation by \( r \) matrices of size \( t \times s \)
\[ N^1, \ldots, N^r \]
in terms of the bases \( w_1^{\vee}, \ldots, w_t^{\vee} \) of \( W^{\vee} \), \( v_1, \ldots, v_s \) of \( V \), and \( u_1^{\vee}, \ldots, u_r^{\vee} \) of \( U^{\vee} \). In fact,
\[ (N^t)_{kj} = (\tilde{\psi}(w_k^{\vee}, v_j))(u_i) \]
\[ = w_k^{\vee}(\psi(u_i, v_j)) = (M^k)_{ij}. \]
This remark is sometimes convenient for computational purposes.
5.4 Applications to rationality questions

5.4.1 Results for plane curves

The results on the moduli spaces of plane curves $C(d)$ of degree $d$ that we obtain using the computational methods in this chapter are described below. We organize them according to the method employed.

**Double Bundle Method.** As we mentioned above, Katsylo obtained in [Kat89] the rationality of $C(d)$, $d \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$ and $d \geq 210$. Using the computational scheme of section 5.3, we obtain the rationality of all $C(d)$ with $d \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$ and $d \geq 30$ except $d = 48$. Moreover, we obtain rationality for $d = 10$ and $d = 21$ (the latter was known before, since by the results of [Shep], $C(d)$ is rational for $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$). The cases $d = 27$ and $d = 54$ are special and are discussed below. For $d = 69$ the only candidate for application of the double bundle method is of the form given in Remark 5.3.1.2, but this case is covered by the results of [Shep] since $69 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$.

**Method of Covariants.** According to Chapter 4, $C(d)$ is rational for $d \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, $d \geq 37$, and $d \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$, $d \geq 65$ (for $d \equiv 1 \pmod{9}$), $d \geq 19$, rationality was proven before in [Shep]). By the method of Chapter 4, we improve this and obtain that $C(d)$ is rational for $d \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, $d \geq 19$, which uses the covariants $S_d$ of Chapter 4, and rational for $d \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$, $d \geq 35$, which uses the family of covariants $T_d$ of Chapter 4.

Let us describe briefly how we obtain the above mentioned improvements algorithmically in this case and for this, we recall some facts from Chapter 4. As usual $G$ is $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$.

- For $d = 3n + 1$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and $V = V(0, d) = \text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee$, we took $W = V(0, 4)$ and produced covariants

$$S_d : V(0, d) \to V(0, 4)$$

of degree 4. We showed that property (b) of Theorem 2.2.3.2 holds for the space

$$L_S = x_1^{2n+3} \cdot \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]_{n-2} \subset V(0, d).$$

(cf. Proposition 4.2.3.1). Moreover, $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 4))/G$ is stably rational of level 8. So for particular values of $d$, it suffices to check property (c) of
Theorem 2.2.3.2 by explicit computation. We give the details how this is done below.

- For \( d = 3n + 2, n \in \mathbb{N} \), and \( V = V(0, d) = \text{Sym}^d(\mathbb{C}^3)^\vee \), we took \( W = V(0, 8) \) and produced covariants

\[
T_d : V(0, d) \rightarrow V(0, 8)
\]

again of degree 4. In this case, property (b) of Theorem 2.2.3.2 can be shown to be true for the subspace

\[
L_T = x_1^{2n+5} \cdot \mathbb{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]_{n-3} \subset V(0, d).
\]

(cf. again Proposition 4.2.3.1). \( \mathbb{P}(V(0, 8))/G \) is stably rational of level 8, too, hence again everything comes down to checking property (c) of Theorem 2.2.3.2.

We recall from Chapter 4 how some elements of \( L_S \) (resp. \( L_T \)) can be written as sums of powers of linear forms which is very useful for evaluating \( S_d \) resp. \( T_d \) easily. Let \( K \) be a positive integer. Then Definition 4.2.4.1 was:

**Definition 5.4.1.1.** Let \( b = (b_1, \ldots, b_K) \in \mathbb{C}^K \) be given. Then we denote by

\[
p^b_i(c) := \prod_{1 \leq j \leq K, i \neq j} \frac{c - b_j}{b_i - b_j}
\]  

for \( i = 1, \ldots, K \) the interpolation polynomials of degree \( K - 1 \) w.r.t. \( b \) in the one variable \( c \).

We have the following easy Lemma (see Lemma 4.2.4.2)

**Lemma 5.4.1.2.** Let \( b = (b_1, \ldots, b_K) \in \mathbb{C}^K \), \( b_i \neq b_j \) for \( i \neq j \), and set \( x = x_1, y = \lambda x_2 + \mu x_3, (\lambda, \mu) \neq (0, 0) \). Suppose \( d > K \) and put \( l_i := b_i x + y \). Then for each \( c \in \mathbb{C} \) with \( c \neq b_i, \forall i \),

\[
f(c) = p^b_1(c)l_1^d + \cdots + p^b_K(c)l_K^d - (cx + y)^d
\]  

is nonzero and divisible by \( x^K \).
So for $K = 2n + 3$ we obtain elements $f(c) \in L_S$ and for $K = 2n + 5$ elements $f(c) \in L_T$. We now check property (c) of Theorem 2.2.3.2 computationally in the following way. We choose a fixed $g \in V(0, d)$ which we write as a sum of powers of linear forms

$$g = m_1^d + \cdots + m_{\text{const}}^d$$

where const is a positive integer. We choose a random vector $b$, random $\lambda$ and $\mu$, and a random $c$, and use formula (4.29) which reads

$$S_d(f(c) + \epsilon g) = S_d\left(p_1^b(c)l_1^d + \cdots + p_K^b(c)l_K^d - (cx + y)^d \right) + \epsilon m_1^d + \cdots + \epsilon m_{\text{const}}^d$$

$$= 24\left(\epsilon^3 \sum_{j<k<p} p_j^b(c)I(l_j, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)$$

$$- \epsilon^3 \sum_{j<k<p} I(cx + y, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)\right)$$

$$+ \epsilon^4 \sum_{i<j<k<p} I(m_i, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)$$

$$= 24\left(\epsilon^3 \sum_{j<k<p} p_j^b(c)I(l_j, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)$$

$$- \epsilon^3 \sum_{j<k<p} I(cx + y, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)$$

$$+ \epsilon^4 \sum_{i<j<k<p} I(m_i, m_j, m_k, m_p)\right)$$

where

$$I(L_\alpha, L_\beta, L_\gamma, L_\delta) := (\alpha \beta \gamma)(\alpha \beta \delta)(\alpha \gamma \delta)(\beta \gamma \delta).$$

Here $I$ was a function on quadruples of linear forms to $\mathbb{C}$: if in coordinates

$$L_\alpha = \alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \alpha_3 x_3$$

and $L_\beta, L_\gamma, L_\delta$ are linear forms defined analogously, and if we moreover abbreviate

$$(\alpha \beta \gamma) := \det \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \\ \beta_1 & \beta_2 & \beta_3 \\ \gamma_1 & \gamma_2 & \gamma_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

then

$$I(L_\alpha, L_\beta, L_\gamma, L_\delta) := (\alpha \beta \gamma)(\alpha \beta \delta)(\alpha \gamma \delta)(\beta \gamma \delta).$$
For $T_d$ we have by an entirely analogous computation

$$T_d(f(c) + \epsilon g) = T_d\left(p_1^b(c)l_1^d + \cdots + p_K^b(c)l_K^d - (cx + y)^d\right)$$

$$= 24\left(e^3 \sum_{j<k<p} p_j^b(c) l_i^m m_j^2 m_k^2 m_p^2 + e^3 \sum_{j<k<p} I(cx + y, m_j, m_k, m_p)^n m_j^2 m_k^2 m_p^2 + e^4 \sum_{i<j<k<p} I(m_i, m_j, m_k, m_p)^n m_i^2 m_j^2 m_k^2 m_p^2 \right)$$

So we can evaluate $T_d$ similarly. Thus for each particular value of $d$ we can produce points in $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 4))$, for $d = 3n + 1$, or $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 8))$, for $d = 3n + 2$, which are in the image of the restriction of $S_d$ to a fibre of $\pi_{L_s}$ resp. in the image of the restriction of $T_d$ to a fibre of $\pi_{L_T}$. We then check that these span $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 4))$ resp. $\mathbb{P}(V(0, 8))$ to check condition (c) of Theorem 2.2.3.2.

**The case $d = 27$.** We establish the rationality of $C(27)$ as follows: there is a bilinear, $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant map

$$\psi : V(0, 27) \times (V(11, 2) \oplus V(15, 0)) \to V(2, 14)$$

and

$$\dim V(0, 27) = 406, \quad \dim V(11, 2) = 270,$$

$$\dim V(15, 0) = 136, \quad \dim V(2, 14) = 405.$$ 

We compute $\psi$ by the method of Theorem 5.2.1.1 and find that $\psi = \omega^2 \beta^{11} \oplus \beta^{13}$ in the notation used there. For a random $x_0 \in V(0, 27)$, the kernel of $\psi(x_0, \cdot)$ turns out to be one-dimensional, generated by $y_0$ say, and $\psi(\cdot, y_0)$ has likewise one-dimensional kernel generated by $x_0$ (See[7], degree27.m2 for a Macaulay script doing this calculation). It follows that the map induced by $\psi$

$$\mathbb{P}(V(0, 27)) \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}(V(11, 2) \oplus V(15, 0))$$

is birational, and it is sufficient to prove rationality of $\mathbb{P}(V(11, 2) \oplus V(15, 0)) / \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$. But $\mathbb{P}(V(11, 2) \oplus V(15, 0))$ is birationally a vector bundle over $\mathbb{P}(V(15, 0))$, ...
and \( \mathbb{P}(V(15, 0))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) is stably rational of level 19, so \( \mathbb{P}(V(11, 2)\oplus V(15, 0))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \) is rational by the no-name lemma 2.2.2.1.

**The case** \( d = 54 \). We establish the rationality of \( C(54) \) as follows: there is a bilinear, \( \text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C}) \)-equivariant map

\[
\psi: V(0, 54) \times (V(11, 8) \oplus V(6, 3) \oplus V(5, 2) \oplus V(3, 0)) \to V(0, 51)
\]

with

\[
\dim V(0, 54) = 1540, \quad \dim V(11, 8) = 1134, \quad \dim V(6, 3) = 154, \\
\dim V(5, 2) = 81, \quad \dim V(3, 0) = 10, \quad \dim V(0, 51) = 1378
\]

Since \( 1134 + 154 + 81 + 10 = 1379 = 1378 + 1 \) and \( 1540 - 1379 > 19 \) we only need to check the genericity condition of Theorem 2.2.2.2 to prove rationality. For this we compute \( \psi \) by the method of Theorem 5.2.1.1 and find that \( \psi = \beta^{11} \oplus \beta^6 \oplus \beta^5 \oplus \beta^3 \) in the notation used there.

For a random \( x_0 \in V(0, 54) \), the kernel of \( \psi(x_0, \cdot) \) turns out to be one-dimensional, generated by \( y_0 \) say, and \( \psi(\cdot, y_0) \) has full rank 1378 and therefore \( \psi(V(0, 54), y_0) = V(0, 51) \) as required. See [?], *degree54.m2* for a Macaulay script doing this calculation.

Combining what was said above with the known rationality results for \( C(d) \) for small values of \( d \), we can summarize the current knowledge in the following table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree $d$ of curves</th>
<th>Result and method of proof/reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>rational (trivial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>rational (trivial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>rational (moduli space affine $j$-line)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>rational, [Kat89/2], [Kat96]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>rational, double bundle method, this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Covariants, [Shep] and this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Covariants, this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>rational, this Chapter (method cf. above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Covariants, [Shep] and this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>rational, two-form trick [Shep]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>double bundle method, this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Covariants, this Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>rationality unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\geq 33$ (excl. 48)</td>
<td>rational, this Chapter, Chapter 4, [Kat89]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus we obtain our main theorem.
Theorem 5.4.1.3. The moduli space $C(d)$ of plane curves of degree $d$ is rational except possibly for one of the values in the following list:

$$d = 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 20, 23, 24, 26, 32, 48.$$  

We want to mention that a decisive speed-up of the calculations for curve degrees divisible by 3 was obtained using the FFPACK-Library for linear algebra over finite fields and the skills of Jakob Kröker who carried out the algorithms with it. The code necessary to do the computations has been made available at a webpage [?].

5.4.2 Results for mixed tensors

In the following example we write down explicit matrix representatives for the maps given in 5.2.1.1 in one special case.

Example 5.4.2.1. In the decomposition of $V(1, 1) \otimes V(1, 1)$, the representation $V(1, 1)$ occurs with multiplicity 2, corresponding to a two dimensional space

$$V(1, 1) \otimes V(1, 1) \rightarrow V(1, 1)$$

of $\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-equivariant maps. Here $a = b = c = d = e = f = s = 1$ and $t = 0$. Therefore a basis for this space of equivariant homomorphisms is given by $\alpha$ and $\beta$.

To give matrix representatives of $\alpha$ and $\beta$ we use the vectors

$$q_{12} = e_1x_2, \quad q_{13} = e_1x_3$$
$$q_{21} = e_2x_1, \quad q_{23} = e_2x_3$$
$$q_{31} = e_3x_1, \quad q_{32} = e_3x_2$$
$$q_{22} = e_1x_1 - e_2x_2, \quad q_{33} = e_1x_1 - e_3x_3$$

(in this order) as a basis of the 8-dimensional space $V(1, 1)$. Using the
5.2.1.1 in conjunction with Theorem 1.3.2.7 yields rationality results for spaces of mixed tensors of which the following is a sample:

**Theorem 5.4.2.2.** The space $\mathbb{P}(V(4, 4))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ is rational.

**Proof.** In fact

$$V(1, 7) \subset V(4, 4) \otimes V(2, 5),$$

$$\dim V(4, 4) = 125, \quad \dim V(2, 5) = 81, \quad \dim V(1, 7) = 80,$$

and the multiplicity of $V(1, 7)$ in $V(4, 4) \otimes V(2, 5)$ is 2. More precisely here $s = 3$ and $t = 1$. By Theorem 5.2.1.1 $\psi = \vartheta \circ \beta \circ \alpha^2$ and $\phi = \vartheta \circ \alpha^3$ are independent equivariant projections to $V(1, 7)$. We will use $\psi$ in this argument.

We now consider the induced map

$$\Psi : \mathbb{P}(V(4, 4)) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}(V(2, 5)).$$

There are stable vectors in $\mathbb{P}(V(2, 5))$ and on $\mathbb{P}(V(4, 4)) \times \mathbb{P}(V(2, 5))$ we can use $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{O}(1) \boxtimes \mathcal{O}(1)$ as $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$-linearized line bundle. Moreover, $\mathbb{P}(V(2, 5))/\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ is stably rational of level 19 since the action of $\text{PGL}_3(\mathbb{C})$
5.4. APPLICATIONS TO RATIONALITY QUESTIONS

on pairs of $3 \times 3$ matrices by simultaneous conjugation is almost free, and the quotient is known to be rational.

Now consider a point $x_0 \in V(4, 4)$. If the map

$$\psi(x_0, \cdot) : V(2, 5) \to V(1, 7)$$

has maximal rank 80, $\Psi$ is well defined. In this situation let $y_0$ be a generator of $\ker \psi(x_0, \cdot)$. If the map

$$\psi(\cdot, y_0) : V(4, 4) \to V(1, 7)$$

has also rank 80 we obtain that the fibre $\Psi^{-1}(\psi([x_0]))$ has the expected dimension. For a random $x_0$ it is straightforward to check all of this using a computer algebra program. See [?] for a Macaulay2-script. We can therefore apply Theorem 1.3.2.7 in the way described in Example 1.3.2.9 and obtain that $\mathbb{P}(V(4, 4))/\text{SL}_3(\mathbb{C})$ is rational. \qed
CHAPTER 5. SMALL DEGREE PLANE CURVES
Bibliography


[Bogo86] Bogomolov, F., Stable rationality of quotient varieties by simply connected groups, Mat. Sbornik 130 (1986), 3-17


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


BIBLIOGRAPHY


[Jac60] Jacobson, N., *Some Groups of Transformations defined by Jordan Algebras. II. Groups of Type F_4*, Journal für die Reine und Angewandte Mathematik 204 (1960), 74-98


[Kat94] Katsylo, P. I., *On the birational geometry of* \( (\mathbb{P}^n)^{(m)}/\text{GL}_{m+1} \), Max-Planck Institut Preprint, MPI/94-144 (1994)


BIBLIOGRAPHY


[Ros] Rosenlicht, M., *Some basic theorems on algebraic groups*, American Journal of Mathematics 78 no. 2, 401-443


